

NOVELSGURU.COM



Terra's Heart by Presh classics

For daily latest books please visit <https://novelsguru.com/>

And also visit my Facebook page, and like and share it

<https://www.facebook.com/groups/3345453369055623>

Thank you guys for downloading this book from my site please keep visiting <https://novelsguru.com/> for supporting me and also don't forget to share it with your friends.

Dear Friends please download these books direct from <https://novelsguru.com/> bookmark this site for latest African books, and also supporting me Thanks.

Introduction

Mom: Mandisa the post man has just passed by with his scooter and i think he has put a letter at the gate..

I immediately put the dish down and ran outside, indeed i had a letter from "Sefako Makgatho university of health sciences".

My heart was beating very fast as if like it was gonna break..

Me: Please God let it be good news this time around.

I applied last year at SMU but unfortunately my application was unsuccessful so im hoping things will be different this time around..

I opened the letter and i read:

"Dear Miss Mandisa Terra Mhlongo

It is with great pleasure to inform you that your application was Successful"

I started jumping up and down, that's all i needed to read. I was jumping around and making soo much noise that my mother came out of the house..

Mom: Yini? (what)

Me: Mama i made it!

I showed her the letter, and she read through.

Her: owww mntanami (my child)

She was lost for words too..

Her: finally our prayers have been answered..

My big sister Maryjane walked in the yard. Maryjane is hardly around she's always spending time at her boyfriend's place.

Maryjane: What's happening?

Mom: Mandisa has been accepted at the medical university..

She looked at me..

Her: Are you serious?

I nodded..

She came to hug me.

Her: Whuuuu mntaka mama (my mother's child)

It was great to see my family soo happy for me. Maryjane is 24 years old she's my sister, she's my best friend she's just my best friend..

Her: What course will she be doing?

Mom looked at letter..

Her: It says Bachelor of Dental therapy..

Maryjane looked at me.

Her: and you wanted to do BDS

Mom: What is that?

Maryjane: Bachelor of Dental Sciences

Mom: Dentist? Me: Yes mama

Mom: go easy on me with this big fancy words..

Maryjane: but look at the bright side though you can do your first year get those exemptions and apply for BDS the following year. Me: That's a plan.

Mom: i don't mind what you do as long as you happy baby..

Maryjane: and you in a Medical school ain't that what we wanted?

I nodded..

Mom: Come ill give you R100 to go buy chips, bread, and cool drink..

Me: Mama you don't have too

Mom: i want too we need to celebrate..

My name is Mandisa Terra Mhlongo, and i am 21 years old. I live with my mother and my sister koSoweto. My father passed on when i was still in grade 10 and that is where everything took a downfall for us,we started struggling here and there. My mother works as a maid she leaves at 04:00am and comes back at 18:00pm. No matter how much that job is difficult for her, but she still pulls through as to put food on the table for me and my sister..

I worked this hard because i wanna see my mother quitting her job, i wanna give her the world same way that she gave me the world. I am very well behaved, i don't have a big circle of friends actually my friend is my sister and her friends too..

I hope that you will enjoy my story, but mostly i hope it will teach someone out there something.

I AM MANDISA TERRA MHLONGO, AND THIS IS MY STORY.

1

I was enjoying my lunch with my mother and sister. Just getting greasy with those slab chips and bread, my sister been hinting that i should eat alot and enjoy now because at school i will only survive on bread and Lucky star fish. My sister is very smart and unfortunately she couldn't go to Tertiary because my parents couldn't afford and she still cannot find a job, this days grade 12 doesn't really get you a job. She has alot of successful friends and it must be painful for her to be the only one who didn't make it in life..

Our family moment was interrupted when my phone rang, i checked it out and put it back. It countinued ringing and i ignored..

Maryjane: Im guessing that's Kenzo?

Kenzo is my boyfriend of 6 months. He is an irritating trust fund baby, when his parents passed on they left him quite a fortune. He moved in with his Rich Aunt and cousins after his parents death and they spoil him rotten..

The funny thing is that my mother works for his family and that's how we met when i used to go to his house to fetch my mother..

Kenzo and i we currently not talking because of him being a man whore, he is always chasing after every skirt that passes him.

Kenzo is 22 years of age and currently not doing anything with

his life other than spending his trust fund money reckless and living off his Aunt too..

Mom: Why are you ignoring his calls?

Me: We just having problems

I don't like telling my family about my relationship problems because then they might hate Kenzo..

Maryjane: Relationships are meant to be steep...

Mom: at least switch off your phone then because ibanga umsindo (Its making noise)

I switched it off..

Maryjane: how much is the registration fee?

Mom cleared her Throat first..

Mom: R4700

That killed our moment.

Maryjane: When are registrations starting?

Mom: 28 January

Maryjane: now Its the 8th of December

Me: We won't be able to come up with that money so quick

Mom: Don't say that

Me: Mom you earning R3500 and we have to spend that money on christmas groceries, i should just accept that im not meant to go to school..

Maryjane: i could ask Kgorolego but..

Kgorolego is Maryjane's boyfriend he abuses her why she's still with him i wonder too..

Mom: ill try something

Me: Don't bother you have already sacrificed alot for me..

I stood up..

Mom: Mandisa manje uyaphi? (where are you going)

Me: to get fresh air..

I went to stand by the gate while crying. I was hurt because every time when we one step close to getting there, something negative comes up Its almost as if like im cursed. Everything that i want i must always sweat for it..

We long been waiting for my dad's company to pay off my dad's money but they also robbing us they wanna give us 10 000 in total but my dad has been working there before i was even born. We didn't accept the 10 000 offer we wanna take them to court, but we still don't have money to get a lawyer....

Coming from an unstable financial background has taught me in life never to date a broke guy. Im not a gold digger but yet im not gonna date a broke guy who will make me suffer more...

Kenzo is well off but i don't like accepting money from him because that already makes him think he owns me, and his Aunt already calls me a gold digging whore..

Kenzo's car parked right next to the gate, i wiped my tears as he came out of the car.. He was wearing his guess blue jeans, white hoody, black&white DH sneakers and his hat..

He has a lazy eye probably the reason why he wears hats most of the time but he still looks cute with his lazy eye..

He did the unbelievable by forcefully kissing me, i pushed him off..

Me: Maan!

I clicked my tongue while wiping my lips..

Me: Kissing me with lips that been busy kissing tramps!

Him: What happened to my Gummy? You used to be sweet like Gummy bears and i used to like those sweets..

Me: What do you want?

Him: You haven't been returning my calls..

Me: Do you blame me?

Him: Gummy i didn't sleep with that Girl..

Me: Your sex tape is trending with her!

Him: fake!

Me: Wow..

I started walking and he grabbed my arm in the most gentle way..

Him: Okay maybe the sex tape is true...

51, 51); font-family: "Open Sans", Helvetica, sans-serif; font-size: 14px;">Me: Maybe?

Him: i don't know what to say anymore

Me: How about the truth?

He put his hands in his pockets and looked down....

Me: Kenzo Zulu im..

Him: Okay i did sleep with her

Me: That's all i needed to know

I started walking away but he stopped me again..

Him: Don't be like that Gummy..

I folded my arms..

Him: as i was coming here i was playing our theme song remember it? The one i sang you when you always came to my house while i was trying to give you hints that i like you?

I ignored him and he started singing it..

Him: "You give me something that makes me scared alright, this could be nothing but im willing to give it a try...."

Kenzo has a beautiful voice and when his voice and our theme song brought back that old spark i couldn't help but smile..

Him: That's more like it..

He pulled me closer to him, what i like about him too is that he is always clean, the smell of his cologne his sexy walk, his brackets Lord have mercy!!!

Him: Im sorry..

He leaned closer and tried to kiss me...

Me: When are you having your Braces removed?

Him: They irritate you?

Me: They make you more cute, maybe that's why you cheat alot..

He laughed..

Him: For you ill have them removed

He kissed me, i missed his soft lips coming into contact with mine too...

Him: So this Saturday is the unveiling of my sister in law Nokwanda, i want you to come..

Me: You want NaZulu to shade me in front of your rich relatives?

Him: You don't understand my Aunt

Me: That she wants you to marry a girl that she approves off?

Ain't that what you said he did to your cousin Banzi?

Him: Yeah but Banzi and Nokwanda ended up falling inlove and they were to get married until she..

Me: Tragically passed on.. sad that she fell from the stairs while drunk..

Him: it was a fatal accident

Me: How is Banzi holding up now?

Him: He is not doing soo well

Me: Its been a while since Nokwanda passed on even today he is still grieving?

Him: she was his true love, you don't get over such..

Me: That's true

Him: So are you coming?

Me: if your Aunt gives my mom a raise

Him: Your mom works with other maids, we have 3 maids your mom only clean the bedrooms that's not alot of work..

Me: Let's be honest your Aunt pays my mother that small amount of cash because she wants us to break up, she's punishing my mother!

Him: What?

Me: Nazulu is Evil!

Him: Hey! (shouting)

Me: Its true! (shouting)

Him: Maybe you are a gold digging whore!

That came out from nowhere!

He started walking to his car..

Me: marry your Aunt and i hope that Brain tumor kills her slowly before yall have kids!!! (shouting)

I picked up a stone and threw it at his car as he drove off...

I turned around to go inside and my mother was standing at the door Shaking her head..

2

I went inside the house and my mother sat me down, i know the speech that is coming..

Her: i did not raise you to act like that damaging people's cars and insulting their elders..

Me: He said soo not nice things to me too mom

Her: Mandisa you must understand that what you do especially where the Zulu family is concerned, you ruining things for me...

I kept quiet.

Her: Call him and apologise

Me: no Ma that will boost his Ego..

Mom: Do you want me to loose my job? How will i send you money when you at school?

Me: We don't even know that ill go to school

Her: Your problem is that you very stubborn!

Me: Mom..

Her: Call him Mandisa!

I got my phone out..

Me: i don't have airtime

Her: Give it to me

Me: Fine ill call him

This is gonna be what he exactly wants from me..

I dialled his number and it rang...

He answered after a long time.

Him: Funani? (what do you want)

I could've told him shit if my mother wasn't here..

Me: Im sorry

Him: For?

Me: saying your Aunt is Evil

Him: Okay

Me: Don't you have something to say to me too? Apologise for saying certain things?

Him: No..

Me: Okay then Bye..

Him: Wait..

Me: What?

Him: Come spend a night at my house, i wanna show you that my Aunt is not as evil as you think she is..

Me: i don't know

Him: Please plus i miss you alot Gummy

Me: When are you gonna fetch me?

Him: Give me a few minutes im at the car wash

Me: Okay

Him: Sharp

He hung up..

Mom: and?

Me: We fine now

Her: That's good

Me: He wants me to come and spend a night at his house..

Mom: You have a problem with that?

Me: Do you have a problem with that?

Her: No i don't

Ofcourse she wouldn't phela marrying into the Zulu family is every parent's dream for their child that's how big the Zulu family is....

Her: Just play it safe, i don't wanna be a Grandma and you still have to go to school..

Having the sex talk with my Mother is awkward.....

Me: i know mom i won't do anything that will land me in a situation that i don't wanna find myself into...

She hugged me..

Advertisement

Helvetica, sans-serif; font-size: 14px;">Her: i love you

Me: i love you too

We broke the hug..

Me: Let me pack, because one night will turn into two nights then before you know it Its gonna be a week..

Her: as long as i know where you are then im happy

I stood up and went to my room to pack a few things, i don't wanna lie i was excited that im gonna spend time with my Caramel cake. Although Kenzo is a jerk, but i love him so very much..

Kenzo showed up after 1hour30min he had to come inside so

my mother can talk to him..

He took off his hat.

Him: ninjani Ma (how are you Ma)

Mom: saphila wena unjani? (im well and you)

Kenzo: ngiyaphila (im well) Thank you for borrowing me your daughter for a few days...

Mom: thought it was gonna be for the night..

Me: told you

Kenzo: i..

Me: Its fine, just take care of my daughter and don't impregnate her..

Him: i wouldn't do that

He looked at me..

Him: Are you ready?

Me: Yes i am

I hugged my mother...

Me: I'll see you when you come to work

Mom: Okay Nana

She kissed me.

Me: awoa mama I'm not a baby anymore

Her: You will always be my baby

Kenzo took my bag and we walked out with my mother waving goodbye to us..

We got into His car and he drove..

Me: Are you sure that NaZulu is going to be alright with this?

Him: Yes plus my brother is coming to visit i want you to meet him. Me: You have a brother?

Him: a big brother his name is Danzo

Me: Why you never told me about him?

Him: because his hardly around his busy running his businesses overseas. Me: His coming for the unveiling?

Him: Yes.. You can take my phone and check for his picture..

I took his phone and started checking his pics..

Me: Is this him? Him: Yeap

I thought Kenzo was the hottest guy ive laid eyes on.. But his big brother yummmmy!

Me: Good looks run in the Zulu family?

Him: You can say that

Me: How are you related to the Zulu family vele?

Him: my mother and Banzi's father are twins none identical twins. Me: Wow.

Him: Sad they both dead now

Me: What happened?

Him: Mom died in an accident, my uncle i really don't know but heard he was shot..

Me: That's deep

Him: i know

Me: being rich comes with alot of problems..

Him: You can say that

3

The Zulu residence is just out of this world. Their mansion is on its own away from other residents. The gate has a gold sign written "Welcome to the Zulu Residence"

They the second richest and known family after the Thobekgale family..

There's MBA security at the gate and others are patrolling around the yard.

The drive from the gate to the door is approximately 5min.. I've been here a lot but I still can't get used to how perfect this place is..

We walked upstairs to his bedroom on those golden stairs i even took my shoes off that's how much you wouldn't want your shoes to stain or scratch the floor..

Me: Your house is beautiful

Him: You always say that everytime that you here Gummy..

As we were walking down to his room down the Corridor i was looking at the white doors of the other bedrooms until my eyes landed on the door where it was written "NOKWANDA ZULU" in Gold it also had her picture i haven't seen this before, i know the room but the writing was new to me....

He opened the door of his bedroom and we walked in..

Kenzo's room was just a typical boy's room..

The first thing i do when I'm here is to watch TV, we don't have Dstv at home so this was heaven for me..

I went and switched on his Big ass flat screen on the wall then i threw myself on his bed..

I tuned in on channel 124 and lucky for me The Kardashians were playing. I am obsessed with the Kardashians..

Kenzo stood there while looking at me..

Me: What?

Him: thought we were gonna spend time together

Me: we will baby just two episodes

His phone rang, he took it out..

Me: Who is that?

Him: my side chick

Me: Sorry?

Him: Its Banzi

He answered and put him on loud speaker..

Kenzo: Banzi

Banzi: poi did you fetch mbali?

Him: shit i forgot!

Banzi: what? You forgot to fetch my baby girl from daycare?

Eyy ngizok'nyathela saan! (I'm going to step on you)

Kenzo: I'm going now

Banzi: you better

He clicked his tongue and hung up..

Kenzo: i have to go and fetch my Niece from day care

Me: well im watching the Kardashians

Him: Its not far, give me 30min..

He came and kissed me

Him: Im coming back

Me: Okay

He walked out. I am a bit intimidated by Banzi, i have never seen him smiling or laughing he is always angry and talking about killing people or beating them up..

As i was sitting there i thought to myself that maybe i can go downstairs and make me something to eat and get a few snacks phela their pantry is like a supermarket..

I walked out and made my way to the kitchen. I passed Nokwanda's bedroom and I stopped. This room is always locked for whatever reason..

Its almost as if like the Zulu family was obsessed with her because every place in this house had her pictures especially the corridor..

I looked at her picture the one on the door and she was very beautiful, innocent, and looked young too...

The house was quiet which led me to think that there was one else other than me..

I put my hand on her door handle..

Me: i just wanna know what's in there..

I twisted it and the room was locked...

I exhaled and started walking away and the unbelievable happened i heard the door unlocking and opening, more like someone had opened it from the inside..

I turned around and went to check..

The door was slightly opened, i won't lie i was a bit freaked out..

I opened it wider....

Me: Hello, is there someone in here?

I walked inside..

The Aroma in the room was pleasant, had a distinctive perfume smell one that wasn't cheap and very rear to find..

Her room was beautiful, her dressing table had her make-up and her jewellery box..

I made my way to it and her compressed powder was open as if like they left it like that since the day she used it.. She had a collection of perfumes some were half empty..

I looked around and i saw her book shelf i went to check and i saw Pharmacology text books and some exercise books. Her hand writing was beautiful..

I made my way to her bed, was a pure white duvet and her gown was ontop with matching sleepers on the floor..

Something was odd with her duvet it had blood stains, it wasn't fresh blood though looked like it has been there for a while..

I concentrated on the blood and something happened was almost as if like I was having a vision or a flash back but something weird happened. I saw her laying on the bed crying, she looked beaten up, she was bleeding and she was in pain.. I couldn't see her face though because she had her back against

me..

It was as if like i was in a memory or something..

Me: Nokwanda?

Her: "i hate you Banzi"

I got closer and stretched my hand to touch her..

51); font-family: "Open Sans", Helvetica, sans-serif; font-size: 14px;">Her: "save yourself Mash, run far before they do you what they did to me"

Me: i don't understand

Her: "You don't have to understand"

I then heard a voice talking at the passage..

Voice: no i understand... I will talk to Joseph.. Can i call you later?

I heard the sound of heels making their way in, i turned around and it was NaZulu..

I looked at the bed again and only her gown was there, it was as how it was when i walked in..

I looked at NaZulu, she didn't say anything she gave me a death stare and also a shocked expression like "how did you get in here"

Me: Nazulu I'm sorry... I.. It's not what you think it is..

I was scared, confused, and i didn't know what to say. I mean how do i explain how i got in a room that was locked??

I looked at the bed again and then looked at her, the best thing

to do now is to just walk away..

I quickly made my way out and went to Kenzo's bedroom. I sat on the bed Shaking i didn't know what was happening and that look Nazulu gave me, i know that I'm in deep shit.....

Kenzo showed up after a few minutes i was glad to see him, i went up to him and hugged him..

Me: Im glad you here

Him: you Shaking

I started crying..

Me: Im just glad you here

He went and sat me down while he Crouched in front of me..

He held my hands and kissed them....

Him: Im gonna ask you something, please be honest with me okay?

I nodded..

Him: How did you get inside Nokwanda's room?

Me: i..

I looked at him and i knew that he wasn't gonna believe me..

Me: i don't know

Him: no don't do that please..

I continued crying..

Him: only Nazulu and Banzi have the keys to Nokwanda's bedroom did you by any chance get the key from their bedrooms? I promise I'm not angry..

Me: Are you trying to call me a thief?

Him: Im trying to understand what happened..

I kept quiet..

Him: Mandisa

The door opened and the guy i saw in the picture the one on his phone walked in, think it was his brother..

Him: the last born of the Zulu family, baby Kenzo!

Kenzo stood up and went to hug him..

Kenzo: Thought you were gonna be here later

Him: Banzi fetched me..

Banzi walked in the room and he grabbed Kenzo then pinned him against the wall,he started strangling him..

Banzi: are you testing me?

Kenzo's brother put his hand on his forehead and shook his head..

Kenzo: Danzo.. H.. Help..

Danzo: you forgot his daughter nigga, as a matter of fact ima take a video and upload it on YouTube..

He took out his phone and took a video....

Banzi: Wena saan!!

I didn't know what to say Danzo noticed me then came to me..

Him: hi

I looked at him..

He was cute more like the caramel chocolate version of Chris Brown...

Him: were you crying?

Kenzo: Da.. Dan..

I looked at Kenzo..

Danzo: I'm Danzo

I pointed at Kenzo signalling that Banzi is killing him..

Him: What's your name?

Me: Mandisa

Him: Mandisa beautiful name

Me: Thank you

Him: Think I'm gonna call you Mash..

I looked at him..

Me: Mash?

He squeezed my cheek

Him: Mash suits you

I immediately recalled Nokwanda's words

"save yourself Mash, run far before they do you what they did to me"

4

Fortunately Banzi didn't strangle Kenzo to death, i don't know why Banzi is always violent.

Later that night Kenzo and i went out for dinner. I was very quiet and busy thinking about what Nokwanda said. Did i really see her or my mind was playing games on me?

I felt Kenzo touching my hand.

I looked at him..

Him: Your mind is very far away Gummy what's wrong?

Me: Sorry

Him: is about me confronting you? With the Nokwanda issue?

I kept quiet..

Him: Im sorry

Me: it's okay

He gave me a weird look

Me: What?

Him: You forgave me that easy?

Me: i don't have energy to fight with you

Him: is everything okay Mandisa?

Me: everything is fine

We continued eating..

Me: fancy restaurant

Him: You can say that

Me: and looks quite expensive

Him: ill do anything to keep on impressing you

Me: you doing a good job

Him: did they finally reply to you at the university?

Me: Yes

Him: and you never told me?

Me: i forgot Kenzo

Him: shouldn't you be excited about this?

Me: i would be if only i had money to pay for my registration fee

Him: How much is it?

Me: 4700

Him: quite expensive

Me: Its a medical school

Him: says it all

He took his phone...

Me: You really gonna play with your phone while we eating?

Him: Just sending a text message quick quick..

I let him be.. After a minute or so he put his phone down..

Him: done..

My phone beeped, i checked and it was an SmS alerting me that 5 000 has been transferred into my account. I looked at Kenzo..

Me: Really?

Him: Im just trying to help

Me: You know how i feel about you giving me money

Him: Im just trying to help you Gummy..

I don't like Kenzo giving me money, it makes me feel like I'm poor and that makes me feel like he is going to leave me for a better girl..

Me: Thank you

Him: now stop frowning

Kenzo and i had a nice meal at the restaurant, was nice just having time to ourselves without fighting and being in each other's throats..

We went back to the house a bit later and Noxolo together with Danzo and Banzi were standing at the kitchen talking....

Helvetica, sans-serif; font-size: 14px;">Danzo: I'm telling you shit was crazy!

Noxolo: can't believe you did that

Banzi: it's insane

We didn't say anything we just passed them..

Noxolo: haibo!

We stopped..

Her: Why don't you guys join us?

Kenzo looked at Banzi..

Kenzo: id rather not

He held my hand.....

Danzo: I insist, you guys cannot lock yourselves in the bedroom just the two of you..

Noxolo: Ya ningazobhora (don't be boring)

We went and joined them..

Kenzo: are you here to stay or you just came for the unveiling?

Danzo: no I'm here to stay, plus Nazulu wants me to take over the family business..

Noxolo: I'm glad that I am a girl Nazulu is always putting pressure on the Zulu boys..

Kenzo: You'll be running it with Mr pitbull here?

Banzi: don't start with me boy...

Danzo: Banzi is moving back to the US..

Banzi: There's nothing left for me here..

Noxolo: you think being away will help you forget about Kwash?

Banzi: i don't wanna forget about her i just wanna accept that she's gone...

Danzo: I wish i could've met her before her tragic passing, what happened again?

Banzi: she fell down the stairs while drunk

Danzo: she was heavy on the bottle?

Banzi: no she wasn't, she was just upset that day..

Noxolo: i already miss her

Kenzo: i was at boarding school i wish i could've met her too

Noxolo put her hand over my shoulders..

Her: at least we have a new Mrs Zulu the second now...

Nazulu: that will never happen

We didn't realise that she was listening to us. She made her

way to us..

Nazulu can be all of those bad things but this woman is beautiful and her clothes are expensive. She even knows how to dress up her slim beautiful body..

She was wearing silver pjs and sleepers..

Her: Don't raise false hopes on the poor child she will never be Mrs Zulu the second or third for that matter. Nokwanda will forever remain Mrs Zulu the second.

I don't even know why Kenzo is entertaining this girl because they never getting married, they wasting each other's time..

Danzo: Nazulu..

Her: No Danzo! She might be be another gold digging whore! All this girls wanna marry the Zulu brother's to get to our riches it's no secret..

Those words hit deep inside..

Her: i don't know why you guys are not even going to sleep busy standing here talking about useless things..

Banzi: Mom i wanna talk to you about..

Her: No Banzi you are not going overseas, and you need to join forces with Danzo into running the family company..

Ya this woman's words are always final..

Her: Noxolo pass me Mbali's bottle

Noxolo did as told. Her: Good night

She walked away Noxolo: Wow!!

I stood there trying to reverse my tears i was very hurt..

5

How Nazulu put that out was very painful, it really cut deep. Its sad when someone hates you and you don't even know what you did to them. I am not after the Zulu riches hell dare I'm going to school to make my own money someday i don't like being dependent.. I didn't go for Kenzo because he comes from a rich family, round about now i can even say his looks get to me than his wallet..

I was in the bedroom crying, when Kenzo walked in..

He sat next to me..

Him: Im sorry

Me: your Aunt will never accept me

Her: She just needs time

Me: i feel like i am competing with Nokwanda and she's dead..

Him: That's crazy Gummy

Me: is it?

Him: Look my Aunt is a difficult person

Me: She's not difficult she's evil

Him: here we go again

Me: did you hear half of the things she said to me? You couldn't even defend me that's how scared you are of her..

Him: That's not fair

I wiped my tears

Him: Maybe we should talk about this in the morning when you less upset..

Me: That's not necessary

Him: Why you saying that?

Me: i think we should break up

Him: What?

Me: Let's not fool each other Kenzo we not gonna work..

Him: You not even gonna try and fight for us? You gonna let my aunt break us up like that?

Me: things would be better if you were part of this relationship!

Him: i am part of it!

Me: i didn't see you defending me!

He kept quiet..

Him: i love you, i treat you like a princess, i give you money.. I don't know what more i should do..

Me: There's everything wrong about that statement!

Him: so where too from here?

Me: please drive me home tomorrow morning

Him: fine I'll do that

He stood up and went..

Kenzo is shit of a boyfriend, and I don't see myself being with him till we get married especially if he cannot stand up to his Aunt..

I went to the bathroom and i bathe..

No matter how much I tried to not let what Nazulu said get to me but the tears couldn't stop falling...

After bathing and putting on my Pjs, I made my way downstairs

i wanted to get myself a tub of ice cream i saw in those chick flick movies if a girl is heart broken she eats ice cream.....

As i Walked down the stairs i heard someone singing and playing the piano. It wasn't Kenzo, this voice was just amazing.. I stopped for a minute to listen carefully, the person was singing "August Alsina_ No love"

Was amazing especially when he sang the chorus..

Voice: "You should just drink a couple drinks with a nigga like me, you'll probably go insane with the Nigga like me..... Ain't no loving me, and I'm the one to blame ain't no loving me.. So don't come looking for love (no love, no love, no love)"..

I listened to them until they got to Nicki minaj's verse then they stopped..

It was quiet for a while, i walked down the Stairs while singing Nicki minaj's verse..

Me: "i guess you know I'm here to save you, me and them girls we ain't the same boo.. You know i hate it, when you leave me.. Cos you love it then you leave it, but you know how i bad i need it, you so fucken inconsiderate why you coming over with it.. You can't treat me like you treat them"

I made it to the kitchen while singing... I opened the freezer to get the ice cream.

Me: "i know you hard i know that you a killer, you started off as

a dope dealer.... So what you want baby”

Voice: “all i want is you”

All along i thought i was alone..

Voice: “pop a couple bands with a nigga like me.. Loving ain’t the same with a nigga like me....”

Then they stopped..

Voice: i didn’t know that you were a fan of Alsina..

I raised my head up and it was Danzo, he was leaning against the kitchen counter with his hands folded..

Me: i... I thought I was alone..

Him: i think so too sometimes

He had a weird but yet beautiful smile, his smile isn’t wide but yet it reveals his dimples i also noticed that he had grills on his bottom central and lateral incisors..

He looked at his wrist watch..

Him: Ice cream at this time of the night?

Me: i.. I just like ice cream

Him: or you just trying to ease your broken heart?

I didn’t say anything. He started yawning..

Him: Good night Mash

Me: Night

He walked upstairs while i looked at him. You know niggas sagging pants is unattractive this days, but how Danzo did his Track pants revealing his Calvin klein Briefs can make any girl drool. Voice: he is fine.

I turned around and i couldn't believe what or who i saw..
It was Nokwanda but her state was disturbing. She had on
bloody clothes. I dropped the tub of ice cream..

Her: Ohw my word you can see me?

I started walking backwards..

Me: You.. You.. Stay away..

Her: Im not trying to hurt you.

I grabbed the kitchen knife...

Her: You cannot hurt me I'm already dead..

I saw blood dripping on the floor..

Me: You bleeding

She turned around and showed me the back of her head..

Her: That's where I got hurt..

It was a disturbing sight to see, i screamed..

Her: Calm down you going to wake everyone up..

I dropped the knife while still screaming..

Her: i won't hurt you!!! Calm down!

Me: You are a..you dead!!!

Her: i know but..

Me: stay away from me!! (yelling)

She looked at the pot on the stove and before i knew it the pot
was flying across the room and it hit me on the head..i went
down immediately..

Her: Sorry that i had to do this..

6

I slowly opened my eyes and my head was spinning. I tried raising it up but it was paining too..

I looked around at my surroundings and i noticed that i was in Nokwanda's room..

I freaked out..

Her: if you scream Nazulu Is gonna come busting into this room, how are you gonna say you got in?

I kept quiet..

Her: That's better

Me: What do you want from me? To be seeing you am i dead?

Her: i doubt, i think the reason why you see me is because you the only one who can help me..

Me: What can i possibly help you with?

Her: Let's switch off the lights as to not alert people..

Me: Im scared of the dark..

Her: then put a towel at the door.

I got a towel and put it by the door.

Me: What do you want from me?

She was still in that disturbing state and still bleeding..

Her: Unfortunately there's nothing i can do about how i look, i died like this..

Me: What do you want from me?

Her: i didn't fall down the stairs while drunk, i don't really drink..

Me: Im not following

Her: Banzi pushed me down the stairs while we were arguing..

That was shocking

Me: What?

Me: i was supposed to marry him but things didn't work out...

Me: What happened?

Her: he became abusive. He would beat me every now and then..

Me: Im not surprised

Her: i need you to help me get revenge and get out of here...

Me: against Banzi?

Her: No.. Nazulu

Me: but she didn't kill you..

Her: she covered up my murder

Me: say what?

Her: Banzi was prepared to confess what happened, he was ready to turn himself in until Nazulu showed up..

Me: Im confused..

Her: Let me rather show you

She walked to the mirror and i followed her..

She showed me what happened that day, was almost as if like i was watching a movie..

Banzi and Nokwanda were at the top of the stairs Banzi was holding Mbali who was still a baby that time and Nokwanda

was fighting to take her baby..

Nokwanda: Banzi give me back my baby..

Banzi: you think I'm gonna hurt my own baby?

Nokwanda fought to take her baby from him, but Banzi pushed her and she fell down the stairs..

I saw her closing her eyes and turning her head away as to not see herself dying..

Banzi: Kwash!!

He walked down the Stairs with Mbali crying, Mbali's cry was painful and loud..

Banzi knelt next to her and i saw blood coming from the back of her head..

Banzi was confused, broken, he didn't know whether to attend Mbali who was crying or get Nokwanda help.. He ended up sitting next to her crying together with his daughter...

After a while i saw Noxolo and Nazulu walking into the scene..

Nazulu: What happened?

Xolo went to take the crying Mbali from Banzi who now had hiccups..

Banzi: i pushed her mom.. I..

Nazulu: Kwanda wake up baby..come on wake up..

She checked her and it was too late she was already gone..

Nazulu: No.. No... No!!!!!! (Crying)

Banzi: i killed her! I killed her! (Crying)

Nazulu stood up and composed herself..

Banzi: i deserve to rot in jail!

Nazulu: No, you not going to jail i won't let you!!!

She started pacing up and down..

Her: Think Zulu think!... Think dammit!!...

She looked at Banzi...

Her: get the whiskey bottle!

Banzi: What?

Nazulu: we are going to stage everything..

Banzi: Mom..

Nazulu: don't be weak!! Get up and get that Bottle now!!!

Banzi stood up and went to get the bottle of whiskey..

Advertisement

51, 51); font-family: "Open Sans", Helvetica, sans-serif; font-size: 14px;">Nazulu knelt down and forced the whisky down on Nokwanda it was spilling here and there...

She then stood and smashed the bottle of whiskey next to Nokwanda's lifeless body...

Her: We stick to one story.. She had alot to drink and she fell down the stairs tight?..

Xolo and Banzi nodded..

She looked at Banzi..

Her: did anyone know that she was meeting up with you?

Banzi: I'm not sure about Tpee because she was living with

him..

Nazulu: Tpee has alot of scandals of his own, he will be the last person to blackmail us..

The mirror went back to being normal..

That was very intense i found myself tearing up so was Nokwanda.

Her: she took me from my family, she promised me the world..

She promised me a better life if i agreed to marry her son...

She was starting to get upset and the room started shaking like there was an earthquake..

Me: uhm Nokwanda..

Her: she controlled me with her money, she let her son abuse me, she used me..

The light bulb broke...

Me: Kwash stop!

She stopped after a while..

Her: Nazulu pries on young vulnerable girls who come from financially disadvantaged backgrounds.. Girls who would do anything to have a luxurious life..

She will buy you the cars, the clothes you gonna be richer than any girl on earth... You gonna enjoy that life and then the abuse starts...

This was hard to process....

She laughed..

Her: do you even know why the Zulu Brothers have names that has a "Z" in them? BanZi, KenZo, DanZo?

I shook my head no..

Her: They the Zulu Warriors not the Zulu tribe, but the Zulu family. They groomed and taught how to be dominant, they will control you, own you, make you their slave and they controlled by Nazulu....

She looked around...

Her: Everyone knows the Zulu family to be good people but they don't know what happens behind these closed doors...

Me: You want revenge?

She looked at me..

Her: Yes..

Me: How do i help you?

Her: You need to marry one of the Zulu Brothers.. Danzo preferably..

I shook my head no..

Her: We need to stop them!

Me: Nazulu hates me plus i..

Her: Nothing will happen to you, i will be here to help you..

Me: just cross over Nokwanda.

Her: i can't

Me: Why?

Her: because Nazulu has trapped my soul here in this house.. I cannot leave this house!

Me: What?!!

Her: she doesn't wanna let me go..

Me: That's sick! Nazulu is sick in the head!

Her: That's why you have to help me move on or get revenge!!!

The door started unlocking..

Nokwanda: quick go and hide!!!

I ran into her closet..

The door opened and i saw Nazulu walking in..

Her: i told you that you cannot be wondering around in the room.. What if someone sees you?

Nokwanda: Nazulu you have to let me go.. This witchcraft you keeping my soul here with is insane!

Her: You wanna leave me?

Nokwanda: i don't belong here..

Her: i can't let you go Nokwanda, i love you! I just need to up the security here, your cousin was here did she see you?

Nokwanda looked at the closet,then looked at NaZulu..

Her: No.. She didn't see me

Nazulu: we almost there baby, we will have your soul to go into someone else's body than for it to go to heaven...

Nokwanda: i know

Her: i just need to keep you safe especially from your cousin

Terra! She has started being nosey

Whaaat Nokwanda is my cousin??

I made a small sound..

Nazulu: What was that?

Nokwanda: what?

Nazulu: Sounds like it came from the closet..

Nokwanda: it's nothing Nazulu

Nazulu: it's definitely something

Nazulu started walking to the closet...

Busted!!!

7

Unfortunately Nazulu did find me in the closet i really thought that i was gonna die not in her hands, but because of a heart attack...

I got out of there and went to stand by Nokwanda with Nazulu giving me that death stare as always..

Nokwanda: Nazulu i.. I can explain..

Her: Explain because i don't understand what's going on!

Me: i didn't mean to...it wasn't my intention..

She came closer and i stood behind Nokwanda using her as a human shield...

Nazulu: she touched you, she...she touched you..

Nokwanda: she touched me because she's my blood..

Me: You can't be touched?

Her: Yes

Nazulu: do you know i can trap your soul forever here and have you witness Banzi getting married again? And another woman raising your baby? Is that what you want Nokwanda?

Nokwanda: Ofcause not, Nazulu you don't understand..

Her: What's there to understand? (shouting)

That was the first time i heard Nazulu yelling..

Nokwanda: i have a plan

Nazulu folded her hands and looked at her...

Nokwanda: you can have Terra run your empire

Nazulu: a gold digger?

Nokwanda: She's family she can be trusted.. Terra has been seeing me for a quite a while now and she hasn't told anyone don't you think she can be trusted?

Nazulu looked at me then looked at Nokwanda..

Nazulu: What's the plan?

Nokwanda: marry one of the Zulu Brothers that way your empire is safe when you pass on, i will even train her on how to be a good obedient wife..

Nazulu: marry Banzi?

Me: What?

Nokwanda: i was thinking of Danzo because he is to take over on the Zulu empire soon and you need a queen by his side that you can trust..

Nazulu was pacing up and down..

Nazulu: i don't know Danzo is difficult to tame..

Nokwanda: Nothing is difficult with Somandlakazi remember?

Nazulu looked at us for a while...

Her: talk to your cousin, I'll be in my bedroom..

She then started walking out,that's when we could breath..

Me: Somandlakazi? What the hell is happening?

Her: the powerful witch that she trusts.. The one keeping me here

Me: so how does she fit in all of this?

Nokwanda: She's gonna make Danzo fall in love with you, then you guys can get married and we will proceed with our plan..

She looked at the picture of her and Banzi together with Mbali on her dressing table.. I sat down next to her..

Me: it must be hard for you

Her: You have no idea.. Seeing my daughter and Banzi most of the time in this house, Is like a cruel punishment..

Me: You still love him?

Her: another part of me will always love him, we had our moments and we had a beautiful daughter too...

This is painful and heartbreaking, always seeing the person you love and knowing that you guys won't be together anymore must be difficult..

Me: You said something about us being cousins?

Her: Grandma always talked about you and your mother she's still hopeful that your mother will show up at her door step one day..

Me: that makes sense, mom has never talked about her side of the family... Maybe that's why we don't know each other..

Her: Yes...

I touched her hand..

Me: ill help you

Advertisement

Helvetica, sans-serif; font-size: 14px;">She looked at me..

Me: ill help you to seek revenge and for your soul to be set

free..

Her: if we go ahead with this, there won't be any turning back..

Me: i know..

Her: Why are you soo keen to help me?

Me: Nazulu is already abusing my mother she slaves her around all day and gives her peanuts at the end of the month.. She abused you and she's doing the same to me. I am not going to let her win she's done messing with my family...

She hugged me..

Her: Thank you soo much

We broke the hug and i had blood in my hands..

Her: Sorry i wish i could change the state of how i look but Nazulu made sure that i remain like this as to remember how i died...

Me: that woman is cruel!

I stood up and went to the bathroom to wash my hands..

I then went back to her.. We had the key turning at the door.

Me: Nazulu?

She shook her head no

Her: Banzi

She took my hand and we went to hide in her closet...

He walked in and wondered around the room for a while..

Him: i can still feel your presence in this room..

He went closer to her bed and noticed the blood..

He touched it and then brought his hand closer to his nose...

He walked around again checking her perfumes and everything else, i could see how this was killing Nokwanda...

He took the picture and went to sit on her bed crying..

Him: Why Kwash? (Crying)

Nokwanda couldn't stop the tears too..

This was the most painful thing i have ever had to witness....

The door opened again and Mbali walked in..

Banzi put the picture on the side and picked her up as she ran to him..

Him: You can't sleep?

Mbali nodded..

Banzi hugged her...

Him: i know i can't sleep too

Mbali removed her dummy from her mouth..

Mbali: Mommy..

She looked at the closet..

Banzi: i miss her too pumpkin

Mbali pointed at the closet...

Mbali: Mommy

Nokwanda: Mbali no.. (whispering)

She got off Banzi and came closer to the closet..

Her: Mommy

Banzi: Mommy is not in there sweetheart

Mbali: Mommy!!

She started crying

Banzi stood up and came to the closet..

I was soo Scared so was Nokwanda..

Banzi: ill open so you can see that Mommy is not here, i told you she's in heaven..

There was no space in the closet for us to hide, what we heard was our heavy breathing and our hearts beating fast..

Nokwanda closed her eyes..

Her: God Please no..

We were saved by Nazulu walking in. For a moment there i thought Banzi was really gonna find us.. Nazulu: so this is were you two been hiding? Banzi: ya we here He picked up Mbali and went to Nazulu.. Nazulu took Mbali from Banzi.. Nazulu: Nanny has been wondering were you disappeared too... Mbali: Mommy.. Banzi: She's been saying that since we got here. It's weird because she doesn't know Nokwanda, Nokwanda passed on when she was very young.. Nazulu: i think Nokwanda's spirit is always with her, you know what they say about babies... Banzi: i have to go, Danzo and i we going out... Nazulu: speaking of Danzo, is he seeing anyone? Banzi: not that i know off.. You trying to hook him up? Nazulu: No.. You know Danzo he is stubborn, he is a pitbull.. Banzi kissed Mbali.. Him: be good for daddy.. Nazulu: gonna be a struggle when you have to leave.. Banzi: She's used to you though.. Banzi started walking but then stopped.. Nazulu: everything alright? Him: there's blood on Nokwanda's duvet Nazulu: her duvet was never washed like you requested remember? Banzi: i know but it's fresh blood... Nazulu: Ohw.. I.. I was bleeding earlier, i had a nose bleed. Banzi: you were here earlier? Nazulu: i am always here, makes me feel closer to her.. Banzi: me too, sometimes i can feel her presence as if like she is here.. Nazulu: i know bokkie, i feel like that too... I'll have her duvet washed. Banzi: No..just don't sit on her bed anymore.. Nazulu: understood Him: i have to go,

Danzo might be waiting for me downstairs.. Nazulu: Enjoy and be safe Banzi: i will He kissed Mbali and walked to the door, Mbali started crying... Mbali: daddy!!! Nazulu: daddy is coming back bokkie don't cry... The door closed.. Nazulu: you can come out now.. I came out first.. Nokwanda came out after a while she had a doek covering her head.. Nokwanda: Hello baby.. Nazulu put Mbali down and Mbali ran to Nokwanda. She picked her up... Me: Mbali can touch you? Nokwanda: she has my blood running through her veins... They went to sit on the bed.. Nazulu: you can't sit there Nokwanda: i have a doek covering my head

Advertisement

I'm sure there won't be any blood stains as yet.. She started rocking Mbali to sleep it was an adorable moment.. Nokwanda: i put her to sleep everyday, she comes here every night i rock her to sleep then Nazulu comes and takes her when she's fast asleep... As much as this is a beautiful moment but it's not good for both of them. Nokwanda doesn't belong here and it's gonna be hard when she has to leave and Mbali won't see her again they have created a strong bond.. I turned and looked at NaZulu.. Me: ill do it, I'll marry Danzo and protect your empire.. She looked at me.. Her: are you sure? I looked at Nokwanda.. Me: im sure Her: ill go and call Somandlakazi She walked out.. Nokwanda appears as human, you'd swear she's alive than

dead.. I took out my phone and took a picture, but she didn't show in the picture it was just showing a light.. Me: Im going to bed, good night I started walking away.. Her: Terra I stopped and looked at her.. Her: Thank you I smiled at her and walked out.. I got into the bedroom and Kenzo wasn't back yet.. I threw myself on the bed and started crying.... I don't know Nokwanda that well but what's happening to her is painful, worse she's family. Nazulu has played with my family, enough is enough now... I might've cried myself to sleep because I heard someone calling my name and Shaking me gently... Voice: Terra.. Terra wake up.. I opened my eyes and it was Nokwanda.. I freaked out and fell from the bed.. Me: What the hell? Her: You know me you shouldn't freak out! Me: What if Kenzo saw you? Her: they went partying.. Me: What are you doing here? Her: are you religious? Me: i try to be, why? Nokwanda: Somandlakazi is a powerful witch and seer she will see right through you that we trying to bring Nazulu down i think you should pray for protection... Me: How? Her: she will hold your hand and everything will be revealed to her.. Me: How do we prevent such from happening? Her: Don't show fear and pray.. Me: Don't show fear i got it I got back on the bed... Her: This is serious Terra, if Nazulu finds out about our plan she's gonna have Somandla burn my soul and she's gonna kill you.. Me: You worry too much we will be fine Her: i hope so Me: now go She walked out and i went back to sleeping.. I woke up the

following day, i woke and i was very nervous. Especially considering what Nokwanda has said to me last night... I had just finished bathing and clothing, i was pacing up and down in the bedroom.... Kenzo walked in and he was looking all fucked up... He walked towards the bed then stopped.. Him: are you on your periods? Me: Why? Him: there's blood stains on the carpet.. Me: i think i am Him: You think? Me: They don't exactly tell me when they Coming.. Him: ill drive you home later Me: No pressure He looked at me... Him: going somewhere? Me: going out for breakfast with Nazulu Him: You and Nazulu? Me: we working on our differences.. Him: does that mean you and i are? Me: i.. I have to go Him: forget i said anything... I walked out.. This was very hard knowing that I'm gonna break his heart by marrying his big brother.. I got to Nokwanda's room and everyone was already there.. Nazulu: you late Me: Im here ain't I? Her: Don't give me attitude I'm not your friend.. I looked at this Somandlakazi person and she looked weird.. Nokwanda: can we start? Somandlakazi: first thing is first.. Your hand please? My heart jumped a little.. I went up to her and gave her my hand which was Shaking.. She held it then closed her eyes for a while.. She then opened them and looked at me... Her: Zulu.. Nazulu: Somandlakazi? Somandlakazi: we have a problem.. Nazulu: i knew it!!! I looked at Nokwanda and she was scared like me..it's over we busted

There was tension in the atmosphere, i was still scared i even

felt my knees getting weak.. Nazulu: What is the problem?

Somandlakazi: i can't read her Nazulu: Why? She let go of my

hand.. Somandlakazi: her heart is clouded by too much anger..

Let loose it can be disruptive.. Nazulu: anger towards who?

Somandlakazi: could be anyone.. She held my hand again.. Her:

but you have a keeper here, she is strong willed, not easily

broken, she's tough.. She can be an asset to the Zulu family..

She let go again and reached down to her pocket, she came

back with a small black stone.. Her: This stone will reveal her

true intentions about the Zulu family.. She put it on my hand...

Her: You are to swallow it, i promise it won't choke... I brought

it closer to mouth.. Nazulu: What will it do? Somandlakazi: if

she means harm to the Zulu family, after swallowing the stone

she will die right here, right now.. Nazulu: that's good They

looked at me.. I brought it closer to my mouth again..

Nokwanda: it's.. That's unnecessary.. Nazulu: She's sincere isn't

she? I lowered my hand.. Nazulu: What now? Me: i will only

swallow this only in condition Somandlakazi: and what is that? I

looked at Nokwanda, then after i looked at them.. Me: if you

set my cousin's soul free.. Nazulu: What? Nokwanda: Terra!

Nazulu: that's never happening.. Me: very well I put the little

stone on Somandlakazi's hand.. Nazulu: don't test me young

girl.. Somandlakazi: Zulu Nazulu: I'm not letting Nokwanda go, i

cannot not loose her the second time! Me: then i guess we done here.. I wonder what Banzi will say when he finds out that his wife is still trapped here by his mother.. Nazulu came charging to me but Somandlakazi held her.. Nazulu: are you threatening me? Me: i wish but no i am not. The truth will come out nothing can stay hidden forever.. Nazulu: nayi ingane ingilinga bo (this child is testing me) Somandlakazi: Calm down Zulu.. Nokwanda: so what happens now? We all kept quiet and looked at NaZulu... Somandlakazi: if we don't do this, Danzo might go marry someone who will drag down the Zulu name and the empire you worked hard for... Zulu: just give me time to think She started pacing up and down, she would even close her eyes in between to think. Her lips were moving but no sound came out.. She stopped pacing and looked at us.. Her: Fine.. Somandlakazi smiled.. Somandlakazi: lets begin She took out some small gold kettle

Advertisement

and she lit something inside of it and started moving around with it while it was taking out smoke and started humming... She then came to me and gave me a small red stone that was shaped like a heart.. Her: swallow this, it will dislogde straight into your heart... Me: isn't that a health hazard? Her: i am Somandlakazi I swallowed the stone... Her: You will only love Danzo alone after this, your heart will only belong to him... She

then gave me a small white stone... Her: This you must put underneath you, it will make you pure again, he will see you pure... Me: underneath? Her: under Me: You mean in my? She nodded... I started walking to the bathroom... Nazulu: were you going? Me: im a private person.. Nazulu: We all women here private can stand outside.. This was just crazy. I didn't argue i lowered my jeans and my bumshort then put the white stone deep inside my Vagina... I then pulled up my bumshort and jeans.. Somandlakazi gave Nazulu another little red stone.. Her: Danzo must swallow this, then their love will ignite.. Nazulu: ill do that.. Somandlakazi: i will return next week to set Nokwanda's soul free then you will swallow the black stone.. Me: Why can't you do it now? Somandlakazi: i didn't come prepared for that.. She started walking away then looked at NaZulu... Somandlakazi: you have a keeper, she's perfect.. Nazulu looked at me, then after she looked at Somandlakazi.. Her: ill walk you out They started walking out.. I went to Nokwanda.. Her: i can't leave you Me: Nokwanda you have too Her: No Terra, if something happens to you i won't be able to forgive myself.. I held her hands.. Me: i can take care of myself Her: The Zulu family is very dangerous Me: ill be fine don't worry about me She hugged me.. Her: Thank you.. Thank you very much.. Me: i wish i knew you back when you were still alive... Her: me too I stood up.. Me: Let me go before Banzi comes in here... Her: ill see you later Me: later it is.. I made my

way out.. I went downstairs where i found Somandlakazi and Nazulu forcing Danzo to swallow the little red stone i stood at the stairs watching everything.... Somandlakazi: it's good, it cleanses your system.. Nazulu: especially since you have a hangover.. Danzo: all i wanna do is sleep Nazulu I'll be fine.... Nazulu: You know Somandlakazi is my spiritual healer, she been helping me with the brain tumor see my health is better than before.. Somandlakazi: so swallow this Danzo: are you sure it will help? Banzi walked in the room.. Banzi: What is this? Danzo: a pill to cure hangover, you shallow it.. Banzi took it from Danzo and swallowed it.. Nazulu: No.. No.. No.. Somandlakazi: No!!! What have you done!!! Danzo: and? Banzi: we'll see Me: Nooo (whispering) Nazulu held on to the kitchen counter as if like she was going to have a heart attack... Danzo: Nazulu, are you alright? Banzi: Mom... They went to her.. I ran back upstairs and went to Nokwanda's room.. I looked at her.. Me: We have a problem.. Her: What? Me: Banzi swallowed the stone instead of Danzo Nokwanda: What???? Me: That was everyone's reaction..

We were gathered at Nokwanda's room as always, everyone was thinking of something on how we can help the situation... It has been 15minutes and no one has came up with a solution yet. Somandlakazi: i think there might be a solution to this.. We all looked at her curious... Her: the black stone will help
Nokwanda: isn't that supposed to be swallowed by Terra?
Somandlakazi: it is, but in this situation it can help. If Banzi swallows it then it will overshadow the red stone you know sometimes darkness is powerful.. Me: i thought the stone was meant for betrayal? Somandlakazi: Banzi doesn't mean no harm to his mother, so instead of it killing him it will overshadow the red stone.. Nazulu: then what are we still waiting for?
Somandlakazi: there are some issues at hand that need to be addressed.. Nazulu: like? Somandlakazi: if Banzi swallows this he will never love again or fall inlove again. It will close his heart to love forever.. Nokwanda: shuuu that's big... Nazulu: and what else? Somandlakazi: this is the last stone i have, if we give it to Banzi then we will never know Terra's true intentions with the Zulu's.. Nazulu: i will not be intimidated by a young girl. What harm can Terra do to me? Somandlakazi: that is true.. Nazulu: so let's get going Me: wait I looked at Somandlakazi... Me: will you still set my cousin free even if i don't swallow the black stone? She looked at NaZulu.. Me: after all it is a great sacrifice from my side, i am marrying Danzo and I don't love

him i love Kenzo so I'm giving up my true love.. Nazulu looked at Nokwanda. Her: will Banzi still remember and love Nokwanda after swallowing the stone? Somandlakazi: i believe so, the stone will not counterfeit or do away with love that was initially there... Nazulu's eyes filled with tears.. Nazulu: i guess we can set her soul free, she has suffered enough.. That was a relief.. Nokwanda: Thank you Nazulu: just know i am not happy about this.. They started walking to the door, Somandlakazi stopped and looked at me... Her: You are not to sleep with anyone other than Danzo. He must be the first to sleep with you since you have stone of pureness inside of you.. Me: if i don't sleep with him? Her: You don't wanna know what will happen.. Nazulu: do you have another red stone that we can give Danzo? Somandlakazi: Yes the last of the last.. We must pray it works because i don't have other stones anymore.. Nokwanda: can't you get more? Somandlakazi: it will take long.. Nazulu: we will make it work Somandlakazi: you must know that such brings about serious consequences.. This love was not spontaneous they didn't find their way to each other on their own, but it was initiated by a great spell and other forces.. Nazulu: whatever comes our way we will be able to handle it.. Somandlakazi looked at me.. Her: will you? I nodded... Her: i hope so Nazulu: can we go now? Somandlakazi: Yes we can They walked out and i went to sit next to Nokwanda.. Her: This is very brave of you and I'm thankful always remember that..

Me: We family Her: if you didn't come along.. I think fate brought you here to save me. Me: i think so too Her: i cannot help but to be very worried about you.. Me: ill be fine Nokwanda Her: the Zulu's are dangerous Me: have faith in me Her: The last time i had faith in me i ended up dead.. Me: They that powerful? She nodded.. Her: Don't allow them to fool you by their riches, the cars they gonna get you and everything

Advertisement

because if you give in to that, they will own you and your soul.. Focus at the goal ahead.. Me: You worry too much Her: i should worry because.. She paused.. Me: because? Her: Why didn't i think of this.. Me: What? Her: i know who can help you defeat the Zulu's Me: who? Her: Tpee Me: As in like Tshepiso Thobekgale? She nodded.. Me: Thee Tshepiso Thobekgale? Her: The one and only Me: How does he fit in? Her: he was Banzi's best friend, but now there's bad blood between them... Me: What happened? Her: long story.. Tshepiso is gonna help you Me: He will defy Banzi? Her: Tshepiso doesn't care about anyone other than himself and his Daughter.. He doesn't even care about his wife. Me: i am marrying one of the Zulu bastards, now you sending me to another bastard? Her: he is not a bastard.. Me: i haven't seen him smiling, whether on TV or papers... Her: he is intimidating but underneath all of that he is a big teddy bear.. The only fuck up i did was not to tell him

where i was going that day.. I had ran away from Banzi and moved in with Tpee because he was the only one who could protect me and Mbali from Banzi.. Me: He believes that your death was an accident? Her: he is not that Naive... You need to reach out to him.. Me: Mr Thobekgale is a CEO of a multi million rand company, he is a vice Chancellor of a private medical college how do i reach out to him? I'm sure they don't even let a fly, fly across him.. Her: This is not that hard.. Me: Let's say i do reach out to him what am i gonna say? "hi Mr Thobekgale you remember Nokwanda she is my cousin and her dead self suggested that you help me bring down the Zulu's. Can we discuss our plan over a cup of tea?" Her: it does sound weird.. Me: Thank you so i have to do this alone! The door opened, Nazulu and Somandlakazi walked in.. They looked at us.. Somandlakazi: it is done, they both swallowed the stones.. Nazulu: Danzo will be yours, and you will be his... Somandlakazi: prepare for your new life, it won't be a crystal stair.. I looked at Nokwanda, she held my hand..

It was a done deal now, I'm gonna marry Danzo Zulu very soon and there was nothing i can do about it. I have nothing against Danzo, he is very charming, very cute, and he is every girl's dream. I probably should be happy i mean it's also every girl's dream to marry in the Zulu family but after what i saw, my perspective about them changed. I used to admire Nazulu, i used to worship the ground that she walked on despite the fact that she hated me. She was one of the most influential women in my life, i made sure that i never miss her on tv when she's giving a motivational speech. She made us believe that her heart and her life together with her riches was from God, if you are a heathen this woman's powerful words would make you wanna go to church.. She was your typical Inyala Vanzant, your oprah winfrey she put a fake image that everyone admired and worshipped.. After finding out what she is capable off, i probably will never look at her the same way again i lost all respect for her.... I went out to look for my mother

and i found her at the back hanging sheets... Me: Ma.. She looked at me Her: Hey Ndisa... I sat down on the grass.. Her: You just gonna sit down in the sun? Me: after what I've been through, believe me the sun cannot hurt me.. Her: is everything alright? I exhaled.. Me: i believe so Her: You can talk to me I can tell her everything but she will never understand and i don't

wanna cause complications.. Me: i broke up with Kenzo Her: Its nothing new, you guys break up a lot.. Me: ya mom but this time we never getting back together Me: That's what you said the last time you guys broke up.. Me: better believe it this time around.. She continued with hanging the sheets.. Me: Ma Her: Yes? Me: can i ask you something? Her: i guess Me: you have been working here for a while right? Her: that is true Me: do you know Nokwanda? She stopped what she was doing for a few seconds then she continued.. Her: Ye.. Yes i know Nokwanda, Banzi's fiancé. Me: What kind of person was she? Her: she was good.. Me: Okay Her: Why do you ask? Me: curiosity.. I could tell from how she acted when i mentioned Nokwanda's name that she definitely was hiding something.. After she had hanged everything we went back to the house.. Me: Let me not keep you from your work Her: When are you coming home? Me: Im not sure Her: did you go and deposit the registration fee money to the university's account? Me: Mom it's still early Her: i just don't want you spending it.. Me: Im not going to spend it Her: if you say so then Someone cleared their throat.. We looked back and it was Nazulu.. Mom: let me get back to work She took the basket and left, i looked at NaZulu.. Her: We need to talk... Me: about? Her: Your future Me: What about it? Her: Nokwanda was studying pharmacy before her tragic death. Me: i had been accepted at Sefako Makgatho to study Bachelor of Dental Therapy.. She was a bit shocked. Her:

Ohw i didn't realise that Me: Yes Her: Well it's not the Thobekgale academy but at least it's something.. Me: Its a med school Her: When are the registrations starting? Me: January and i already have money for registration Her: Ohw Me: i even applied for a bursary Her: and? Me: still waiting for them to reply, if they decline i will apply for NSFAS.. Her: that won't be necessary.. Me: i don't want your money, i will get through my course alone.. The last thing i want you to do is to call me a gold digging whore... She was very speechless.. Me: anything else? She shook her head no... Me: Excuse me I walked out on her. It was very good to stand up to her like that, I'm not gonna let Nazulu play with me. She has already played with Nokwanda and my mother.. I went to the bedroom and Kenzo was with Danzo. Danzo was sitting on the bed while Kenzo was at the bathroom.. Kenzo: I'm coming just wanna get the right hat... Danzo: Ayt cool Me: Hey He looked at me and as soon as our eyes locked i felt the immediate connection between us... It was soo strong that I could feel the atmosphere in the room changing... Him: hi.... We didn't say anything after that, we were just starrng in each other's eyes until Kenzo came into the room from the bathroom... Him: Im ready man lets go... We broke the eye contact.. Danzo: uhm yea let's.. Let's go.. Kenzo: is everything okay? Danzo: Everything is good, let's.. We can go Kenzo walked out first.. Danzo got up from the bed and was walking to the door when we both stood in each other's way..

Me: Im sorry.. I didn't mean too... Him: Its okay... We got close to each other while still starring in each other's eyes... He leaned over for a kiss but Kenzo's voice interrupted us.. Kenzo: Dude are you coming or what? Danzo: I'm sorry i have to go... I stepped out of his way and he walked out.. I threw myself on the bed and starred at the ceiling... This was tense, i have never felt like that for a guy not even for Kenzo..

It was around 20:00 and we were gathered at the dinner table. It was all of us except for Noxolo she's always up and about going places that one she's hardly at home.. Danzo was sitting across me while Kenzo was sitting next to me... Danzo: tomorrow I'll be looking at the files for the company.. Nazulu: that's very good, I'm sure Banzi will show you the ropes too.. Banzi: i sure will Nazulu: it's good to have the eldest running the family company, it has always been my dream for Danzo to come back and run his uncle's company.. Banzi: are you saying i wasn't running it okay? Nazulu: No Bokkie you ran your Father's company very well, but I always wished it could be Danzo.. This was very emotional for Nazulu she started tearing up.. Her: i am soo grateful that Noxolo is the only Female Zulu when it comes to my kids and Grace's kids because here i am tonight sitting with all my boys whom i am very proud off and who always keep the family together.. Kenzo went and hugged her.. She kissed him on the cheek. Her: and this last born of the family who is always making me shout... He kissed her on her cheek too Kenzo: i don't mean too.. Her: i know baby, i know.. I understand this is supposed to be a beautiful moment, but I was very irritated by everything that was happening because this woman is the most evil but now she's making herself mother Theresa.. Her: if i can die tomorrow, I'll die in peace.. Danzo: that would be too soon, because you still have to meet

your other grandchildren Banzi cannot be the only one to have a baby in this family.. Nazulu: someone is talking as if like he is ready to have a family of his own.. Danzo: i mean I'm 30 and I've down all my player cards, i am looking forward to settling down. There comes a time in a man's life were he will wanna have a wife and kids.. Banzi: i never thought that you would be saying that Danzo: as the big brother i need to set an example Banzi: you just older than me with one year so chill... They laughed... Kenzo came and sat next to me again.... Kenzo: this talk of wives and kids count me out... Nazulu: i thought you and Terra were "Serious" Him: she dumped me Wow thank you Kenzo for throwing me under the bus.. Nazulu: Why? Kenzo looked at me... Him: Yeah why Terra? Me: wanna do this in front of your whole family? He didn't say anything.. Nazulu: well i don't see you guys Sharing the same bed anymore.. Me: ill sleep in the guest room and go home tomorrow.. Nazulu: you don't have to be dramatic, you can stay and enjoy the December holidays with us... Me: i would like to enjoy them with my family.. Nazulu: i insist Me: such holidays are meant to be spent with family.. Danzo: uhm is this going to turn into an argument? Nazulu: No

i just don't know why Terra always feels the need to go against me.. Banzi: i think she just wants to spend time with her family.. Nazulu: we are going to be her Fa.. She paused.. Danzo: Why don't she just invite her family to come over, especially on

Christmas.. Nazulu: that could work I feel the reason why Nazulu wants to keep me here is to control and tame me.. Nazulu: I'm going to bed, was nice having dinner together as a family.. Danzo: good night Nazulu: good night She walked upstairs... Me: ill clear the table Danzo: ill help you Banzi: you seem to amaze me tonight, first its the marriage talk now you helping to clear the table.. Danzo: i am a gentleman Kenzo: Whatever dude Banzi looked at Kenzo.. Him: Fifa? Kenzo: you know Ima kick your Ass right? Him: save the talk.. Kenzo: Ayt lets go Banzi: Maybe sister Danzo will come play when his done washing dishes.. Kenzo laughed Danzo: maybe that's why you haven't hit it off with Anyone since Nokwanda passed on, and you saan that's why they put you on the side lines you don't know how to treat a lady.. I laughed.. Kenzo: shame bona uyamkitaza (he is tickling her) Banzi: well we wish you all the best in the kitchen, i hope yall get married with the pots being your witnesses.. Kenzo: he has to find a bitch first, now that is my lady... Banzi: you on the side lines Kenzo: we always go through this, it's just a phase.. Danzo: just go play your stupid game niggas! They left the room to go and play Fifa.. Danzo helped me to clear the table, we put the left overs in the fridge and put the dirty dishes in the dishwasher.. Me: Thank you Him: You welcome. Me: ill go to bed I started walking away and he grabbed me then pulled me closer to him.. We then kissed. The kiss definitely ignited something in us, it created some

chemistry between us right there and i knew that we were meant to me.. He was gently squeezing my tinny waist, i had one hand around his neck and one hand on his cheek.. Him: i would really like you to stay for a while.. I know you wanna spend time with your family but I feel like I should spend more time with you too if you allow... I didn't know what to say but what i know is that i would like to spend time with him too.. Him: Please.. Me: id like that He smiled and we continued kissing..

I had taken my things from Kenzo's bedroom and i moved into the guest room for the time being. Kenzo was in Banzi's room still playing games when i took my things.. Danzo didn't go to play with them, he was laying on the bed with me. I was having terrible period pains and he was holding a hot water bottle against my womb... Him: How do you feel now? Me: They still painful He pecked my lips... Him: unfortunately i don't think there's any pharmacy open at this time so we will have to rely on the water bottle.. I put my hand ontop of his.. Me: i like your hair, looks different are you coloured? He chuckled.. Him: not really, it just runs in the Zulu family.. Me: i see Him: Are you gonna come at the office tomorrow? Maybe have lunch with me? Me: i don't think I'll be able to make it.. Him: That's sad He planted wet kisses on cleavage.. Tomorrow Somandlakazi is setting Nokwanda's soul free so i have to be there.. Me: What problems do you come with? He gave me a side smile.. Him: i don't have problems Me: so you happen to be just single? Him: Yeap Me: i don't buy that Him: Its okay if you don't believe me Me: ya We kept quiet for a while.. Me: don't you think this is wrong? Him: What? Me: all of this? I mean i was in a relationship with your brother... Him: didn't you guys break up? Me: we did but.... He kissed me then got out of bed.. Danzo: Kenzo is a big boy, plus i know my brother he will be fascinated by another skirt that passes him.. Me: so where are you going?

Him: i have my own bed He winked at me then left.. I know Banzi is an abusive bastard, Kenzo is a cheating bastard.. Danzo i don't know his Demons and it kinda scares me a little..... I got out of bed too and made my way to Nokwanda's room.. She was sitting on her bed rocking Mbali to sleep as always.. I sat next to them and looked at Mbali she was soo cute she looked more like Banzi than Nokwanda, she only had Nokwanda's eyes and cheeks.. She was fast asleep and made those cute sounds while sucking her pacifier.. Me: How old is she? Nokwanda: She's gonna be 2 years old in a month's time... Me: and she still sucks a Pacifier? Nokwanda: you know Nazulu Nazulu walked in as we were sitting there.. Nazulu: can i take her? Nokwanda nodded.. Nazulu took Mbali, she then looked at me.. Her: i saw Danzo coming out of the guest room? Me: Ohw yea i was with him Her: That's good She walked away.. Nokwanda looked at me. Me: What? Her: That's why you been scare today? Me: i don't know what you talking about Her: You inlove with Danzo, i can see it in your eyes.. Me: the stones remember? Her: ya i forgot the stones She said that comment clearly showing that she doesn't believe me.. Her: Don't forget you not supposed to fall inlove with him that would be selling your soul and it will ruin the plan, you won't be able to bring the Zulus down if you inlove with one....

Me: i know the rules Kwanda... Her: i hope so.. Anyway have you reached out to Tpee? Me: uhm no She gave me a look that said "why"

Me: Im still trying to find a way Her: You still trying to find a way or you just occupied by Danzo?

Me: You know Nokwanda I'm doing this for you and our family Her: and i appreciate it Me: then show that you appreciate it other than complaining!

Her: now that is Terra Zulu talking, not Terra Mhlongo... I stood up..

Me: You know what I'll see you tomorrow morning when Somandlakazi is here to perform the ceremony for you..

Her: Terra... Me: Good night Kwanda I walked out of the door, to the guest room when i found Kenzo sitting at the door..

Me: and?

Him: i wanna talk to you He stood up and we walked inside....

Me: What's up? Him: What exactly is the problem? Me:

Nothing

Him: You said we should break up because of my Aunt, now you and my aunt are fine i seriously don't know why we can't be.. Me: sex tape? Cheating? Don't you think that broke us up too..

Him: i thought we got passed that.. As we were standing there i heard Danzo singing and playing the piano, it was so funny because the guest room was a bit far from the lounge for me to hear him sing.. "if your heart is hungry you can place your order here with me. Leme serve you up, leme serve you up.. See you can have it your way you the customer.

If you want me supersized with some loving on the side, just ask for what you want you the customer" His voice is soo beautiful and intoxicating, for a minute i thought we had The Weeknd in the house..

Kenzo: Mandisa!! (shouting) I came back to reality.. Me: What? He was Holding Danzo's watch..

Him: What is this doing here on your bed? I didn't know how to explain myself and he looked mad pissed.

14

Kenzo decided to spend a night with me at the guest room, because in his own head Danzo and i we having an affair. The confirmation to his theory would be Danzo walking in the guest room in the middle of the night, that's all the confirmation he needs to prove that Danzo and i we actually having something going..

Its been 2 hours now, the lights were still on he was laying next to Me busy singing while facing up and period pains were killing me..

Him: "i feel like such an insomniac,why do i tire of counting sheep, when I'm more too tired to fall asleep.. To 10million fireflies I'm weird cos i hate goodbyes, got misty eyes as they..."

I turned and looked at him..

Me: do you mind?

He was looking at Danzo's watch..

Him: Rolex watch, worn mostly by American Rappers just their way of having bragging rights. Costs around \$10 000,that's approximately to R140 000, if we still on \$1 = R14.00..

Me: What is your point exactly because I'm missing it?

Him: even if you wanna deny there's only one person, well two people in this house who have Rolex watches..

Me: and?

Him: Mbali broke Banzi's Rolex, and this one is working perfectly fine which proves it belongs to My brother, what i don't understand is why would it be here?

Me: i told you he forgot it at the kitchen when he was helping me to wash the dishes, wouldn't expect him to wash dishes with a Rolex now do we?

Him: That statement would make sense if we didn't have a dishwasher..

Me: Kenzo what do you want from me? (shouting)

Him: The truth!! (shouting)

You know when you have period pains and someone pisses you off like that, you just feel like Bursting..

Me: i can't do this..

I turned and faced the other way while crying..

Him: Im sorry i didn't mean to upset you

He got close to me and squeezed me tight..

Me: Im in pain literally the last thing i want is to be fighting about something that's useless..

Him: i know and I'm sorry

Me: Im not like you, i never cheated on you I'm not like that..

Him: Just that you have been acting very strange lately, but I'll take your explanation for it. He forgot the watch at the kitchen while according to you, you were washing dishes..

Me: Don't patronise me..

Him: im just seconding your explanation..

I kept quiet..

Him: ill go get you some pain killers

He got out of bed and walked out still holding the watch..

The last think i want is Danzo and Kenzo fighting, when Somandlakazi and Nazulu did this they forgot Kenzo in all of this....

He walked in after a while

Advertisement

he didn't have the pain killers with him..

He got in bed and cuddled me..

Me: What happened to the pain killers?

Him: unfortunately they expired

He kissed me on my forehead

Him: i love you

Me: i love you too

Him: How about we go out for breakfast tomorrow morning

Me: ill probably be still sick, all i want to do is to just sleep the whole day..

Him: and watch the kardashians?

I chuckled

Me: Maybe.. Can i ask you something?

Him: anything

Me: When your family was talking about kids and marriage you said they should cut you out in that talk, if we not gonna get married some day then what are we doing?

Him: i didn't mean it that way, just i need some growing up to do before making that type of commitment..

Me: Okay

Him: i hope you didn't get offended

Me: i didn't

There was a knock at the door, i got a bit worried what if it's Danzo??

Kenzo: Come in..

The door opened and Nazulu walked in, she was holding a bottle of pills..

She was stunned to see Kenzo with me...

Her: i thought you guys broke up?

Kenzo: we cool now, we worked through our issues...

That statement was so wrong in soo many ways we didn't work through anything.....

Nazulu: the painkillers you asked for..

Kenzo: Thank you Zulu..

Her: Good night

Kenzo: night

Nazulu: i hope the pain killers will help you Terra

Me: i hope soo too

She walked out..

Kenzo: let me get you water

As he was gone to get water, i looked at the pills and i wasn't familiar with them..

Can't trust anything that says "Nazulu"...

Kenzo came back with water..

Me: You know i think I'm feeling better

Him: What?

Me: im better

He looked at the pills..

Him: Ohhh i see were the problem is..

I looked at him..

Him: You think Nazulu gave you the wrong pills?

Me: i was trying not to say that

He opened the bottle and took out 2 and drank...

Him: We'll die together

Me: You crazy

I took two and drank too, then after we slept with him gently rubbing my womb..

I woke up the following day and took a long relaxing bath. I was feeling better Nazulu's pills really worked their magic i couldn't feel the period pains so far because of them...

Kenzo and i we were going out for breakfast, he was still getting ready so i told him that I'll wait for him downstairs..

On my way downstairs i spotted Banzi and Danzo at the kitchen talking. Danzo was wearing all formal he looked very handsome..

I got closer but not that very close and just looked at him..

He was Holding a mug all talking and smiling here and there revealing his dimples and his grills..

Everything was just in slow motion i was starring at his lips moving, his side smile, his dimples, his eyes, his pink lips, the way he would fully concentrate when Banzi would say something..

Danzo was just, i don't even know how to describe him..

He had a nice fit body, he wasn't buffed but it was clear that he does visit the gym...

I felt someone putting their arm around my shoulders i freaked out.

Kenzo: it's just me

Me: You freaked me out

Him: Im sorry

We went to Banzi and Danzo with him still having his arm around my shoulders..

Kenzo: Morning

They both looked at us..

Danzo: wad up?

He said that while bringing the mug closer to his luscious pink lips..

Kenzo took out the watch...

Him: i believe this belongs to you

He put the mug away..

Danzo: Thank you

He took it and rolled his sleeve to put it on..

Kenzo: interested in knowing where i got it?

Danzo: guest room?

Kenzo: What was it doing there?

Danzo looked at me. Danzo: good question

Me: well we.. Remember.. It was when we..

I was choking. Me: We were washing dishes..

Danzo shook his head no..

Him: How can we wash dishes when we have a dishwasher?

Banzi: are you two fucking?

Kenzo: he is breaking the Zulu boys code, never fuck with nobody's girl..

Danzo: but you don't have a girl.

Banzi laughed. Banzi: this is deep.

Kenzo: if i find out that you fucking with my girl I'm gonna kill you, no questions asked! Banzi started clapping hands

Banzi: Lord bless the dead my father ain't here who was gonna sit yall down and talk nothing about nothing!

He looked at Danzo. Banzi: you heard this young man he gonna kill you! Mr D. Zulu what is your comment?

Danzo smiled and took the files from the table...

What gets to me is that Danzo could be soo calm in this situation..

Danzo: the Zulu company is waiting for me ngisayo gubha igolide njengase'gibhithe (im going to dig up gold just like in Egypt)..

Banzi: and that is your whole explanation to the situation you going to dig up gold?

Danzo walked out, Banzi looked at Kenzo and laughed while sipping on his coffee..

Banzi: he is going to dig up gold..

15

Somandlakazi came by to prepare for Nokwanda's departure, we were gathered in her room as always..

I wished that i had known Nokwanda back when she was still alive and we probably could've been more than just cousins we also could've been good friends..

Somandlakazi: is everyone ready?

We nodded..

She looked at NaZulu..

Her: did you release her from your heart?

Nazulu held Nokwanda's hand..

Her: although it was difficult but yes i did..

Somandlakazi: Let's begin

She had a small basin where she poured what she referred too as "pure water"..

Her: This water will show you the way to the other side. You shall depart in your true self, free from all this pain and suffering..

Somandlakazi looked at her..

Her: are you ready to go?

She exhaled...

Her: Yes

Somandlakazi: you can look in the water while i recite the spell to set you free, when I'm done you would've transformed into your true self and ready to go, the way will be shown to you..

Nokwanda looked at the water while Somandlakazi recited the spell. It was a bit of an emotional moment especially for Nazulu who clearly didn't want Nokwanda to go..

When Somandlakazi was done saying the spell, we all expected to see Nokwanda transforming but nothing...

Somandlakazi recited the spell like 5 times and still there was nothing..

Somandlakazi: did you see the way home?

Nokwanda: No

Somandlakazi: i don't understand

Nazulu: What do you mean you don't understand you supposed to be the best!

Somandlakazi: i did everything accordingly...

We then saw a small red heart shaped stone surfacing from the water looked exactly identical to the one i swallowed....

Somandlakazi: impossible!

I was lost Deep down in the lost coast that not GPS can find me..

Nazulu: What's going on?

The door opened and it was a shock who walked in, it was Banzi he was holding Mbali..

Him: Nazulu Mbali is..

When he saw Nokwanda he was soo shocked that he almost dropped Mbali..

Nazulu: i can exp.. Explain..

I have never seen Nazulu this scared..

Mbali: Mommy!!!!

Banzi put Mbali down and she ran to Nokwanda..

Nokwanda: i can't let her see me like this..

I picked Mbali up who started fighting me all scratching my face..

Mbali: No!!!

Me: Calm down..

Nokwanda quickly went to the bathroom..

Banzi was shocked, confused

Advertisement

had a bit of tears in his eyes.. It was mixed emotions..

Nazulu: Banzi.. I.. It's not what..

Banzi: Nokwanda is.. She..

He wiped his tears..

Banzi: so Mbali was actually seeing her?

Nazulu tried to keep calm but tears were failing her..

Nazulu: No Bokkie Nokwanda is.. She is dead..

Banzi: i just saw her as a human or is my mind playing games on me?

Somandlakazi: although she appears as a human being but she's not, Nokwanda is dead...

Banzi: can someone explain what the fuck is going on before i loose it?

Somandlakazi looked at NaZulu..

Nazulu: she.. She.. She..

Banzi: She, she, she, she what? (yelling)

The room went quiet..

Banzi: if you can see her, i can see her, and they can see her then she's not dead!!!

Somandlakazi: it's time for the truth Zulu...

Banzi: What truth?

Nazulu was wet with tears..

Banzi: What truth?

Nazulu shook her head no...

Banzi: you not gonna tell me the truth?

She still shook her head no..

Banzi: Fine..

He started walking out..

Nazulu: Banzi...

She tried walking after him but Somandlakazi held her back..

Nazulu: i can't loose my son over this (Crying)..

.

.

NOKWANDA

I was laying on the bathroom floor in the pool of my own blood that was coming from the back of my head. That contributes to

Somandlakazi's spell that backfired when she decided to keep me here i bleed a lot from my head but that don't have effects..

I was crying that's all i seem to have been doing since I was restrained from crossing over..

Seeing Banzi brought back memories, some memories were good and some were bad..

My life was never at peace, and even after death i still can't find peace...

All i wanna do is to just experience what they mean when they say 'Rest in peace" because now i am "Resting in pieces"

16

TERRA

I was tired of all the Zulu drama. Ask me again if i wanna be rich someday and my answer will be different..

Later that Day, i decided to go and see Danzo i brought him lunch..

The Zulu company was very big and it was a beautiful building it was almost as if like i was walking into another world..

The Receptionist didn't give me a difficult time when i told her who i am and that i am living with the Zulus...she just directed me to Danzo's office.

I arrived there and the desk next to his door was empty, meaning he doesn't have a PA yet..

I walked up to the door and it was written "Banzi Zulu" underneath it was written "CEO" so they haven't made changes as yet..

The door was half opened and i stood there starring at him while he was concentrating on his laptop.. I didn't disturb him i just looked at him.

There's just something about Danzo that i can't put my finger in it, he has his own charm that can make any girl melt..

After a few minutes of me standing there, he closed his laptop with frustration written all over his face..

He then noticed me starring at him..

Him: for how long have you been standing there?

Me: long enough to see you pissed

He chuckled, that side smile kills me everytime....

Him: Yeah i don't get pissed or angry..

I walked in..

Me: then you not human

Him: You can say that

I sat down..

Him: What brings you here?

Me: i brought you lunch, hope you haven't eaten already..

I had bought this lunch with some of my registration cash money..

I took the food out, it was a quarter leg chicken with a chef salad and ice tea..

Him: nothing for you?

Me: Im fine

He looked at the food

Me: You don't like the food?

Him: Its not that

Me: What is it?

Him: i already ordered lunch

Me: ohh i feel so stupid right now

Advertisement

i should've called first..

Him: Its alright, I'll eat this tomorrow.. I'll put it in the mini fridge

Me: Okay

Some woman showed up as we were sitting there, she was wearing a chef jacket..

Her: Good afternoon

We greeted back..

Her: Your Mushroom Ravioli sir

Danzo: Thank you, how much do i owe you?

Her: R550

He took out his wallet and then took out R600 from it..

Chef: Thank you

Him: Thank you Chef sunair

She then walked out..

Me: You have a chef delivering your food to you, wow..

Him: Im exclusive.. Wanna join me?

Me: i don't eat food i have never heard off..

Him: Don't be too black.. Come on its an Italian dish.

I rolled my eyes..

I stood up and went to sit on his lap..

Me: it smells good

Him: wait until you taste it

He took the fork and fed me...

Him: and?

I nodded..

Me: doesn't taste bad

Him: best Italian dish for me

Me: i see

He looked at me

Him: maybe we can go out tonight, you can also try out Pacific Salmon..

Me: Pacific what?

He laughed..

Him: Its okay never mind..

He started eating..

Me: Danzo

Him: Yes?

Me: i love you

He looked at me in a weird way..

Him: excuse me?

I couldn't believe that i said that..

Me: Omg.. I...

I got off him..

Him: Mash

Me: Im sorry i didn't..

He grabbed my hand as i was about to walk away...

Him: Calm down

Me: i feel so stupid right now

Him: You shouldn't, because i might feel the same way about you..

Me: You do?

Him: i think so

He got closer and kissed me..

Him: Why don't we go away for a few days, just you and me?

Me: Where?

Him: anywhere you want

Me: uhm...

Him: What you got to loose?

Me: id like that then

He smiled and kissed me again..

17

NOKWANDA

Everything wasn't making any sense, just when i thought i will find peace at last but then this turns out. Somandlakazi managed to come up with a spell that will make me to stop bleeding, but all i wanted from everything was to just cross over..

Me: What really happened?

Her: The only way that you going to cross over is if Banzi let's you go..

Me: How does Banzi fit in all of this?

Her: even i cannot stand in the way of true love. Banzi has been beating himself and blaming himself alot about what happened to you i think if he can find closure and realise that you have forgiven him then that will make him to let you go..

Me: We talking about Banzi here

Her: i know but unfortunately that's how it is and i cannot change it...

Me: all i wanna do is to cross over, I cannot keep on letting my daughter see me any longer i don't want her holding on to something that isn't there anymore..

Her: i understand very clear and i hope Nazulu will tell Banzi the truth..

Me: i hope so too

Her: Maybe you can talk to him

I looked at her..

Me: What? You saw how he stormed out of here..

Her: You still scared of him aren't you?

Me: Banzi is someone who easily gives into Anger...

Somandlakazi: he can't hurt you, you dead..

Me: Im not going to talk to Banzi

Her: You have too, only you can get through to him..

She stood up...

Him: i have to go

She walked out...

There is no way that im going to talk to Banzi, especially not about this..

.

TERRA

It was great spending time with Danzo. He took the whole afternoon off and we drove around just spending some quality time together.. He even suggested that today we don't go home, we just go and spend a night at a hotel just me and him...

We bought things that we were gonna need such as your toiletries and clothes, not alot of clothes just one outfit each for the following day.....

We drove up to the Italian restaurant that he suggested later on that day...

It was a beautiful restaurant, the colours coming into play were Black, Red, and white..

The waitress came to give us our menus..

I wasn't familiar with all the appetisers there..

Him: ill have the Rizotto with lobster

Me: is it nice?

Him: i just like the white wine as an ingredient there..

Me: uhm i think ill have that too

He smiled at me. Danzo smiles alot, he is always calm just too good to be true..

Him: try the shrimp and garlic Ravioli, you'll love it..

I looked at the waitress...

Me: ill have what he has suggested..

Waitress: that would be all?

Danzo: you can start us off with sweet red wine as we wait for our appetisers..

Waitress: Yes sir

She walked away

Danzo: you have never been in an Italian restaurant before?

I shook my head no

Him: stick with me and I'll take you to places..

The waitress came with our orders and the wine after a few minutes..

Me: is it supposed to be this small in a dish?

Him: Yes.. Try it

I took a fork and tasted it..

Me: it actually tastes nice

Him: i know

Me: so you used to this fancy dishes?

Him: living in the United States has made me to be obsessed with certain dishes. There's alot of great chefs down there..

Me: i can tell..

We moved on to the main course which they call "Entrée" i had what i was familiar with which was Lamb, Danzo had something called a Wellington it looked like meat in a pastry..

Him: next time I'll take you to a steak house, so you can try the new york strip..

Me: sounds interesting

Him: and yummy

When we were done eating

it was around 17:00 we made our way to the hotel, but we bought a few snacks on our way there....

Our hotel room was a bit cosy, rose petals on the bed, champagne and chocolates on a small table. Strawberries and cream on the bed too, was just too romantic. I looked at Danzo..

Me: And?

Him: The honeymoon suite was the only one available

Me: Really?

Him: i promise you

His phone rang...

Him: Sorry i have to take this

He walked out of the room to answer it...

I went over to check the view, wasn't that impressive at least not like the ones on Tv when someone is in a hotel room and goes to check the view and it's very beautiful..

I stood there for quite a while just thinking about everything..

Danzo walked in.

Me: that took long

Him: it was a business call, they usually take long...

Me: uhm okay

Him: Come here

I went up to him and he held my hands...

Him: i want you to be very certain about being in a relationship with me..

I exhaled..

Me: i am certain

He looked at me for a while..

Him: then there's only 3 things that I want from you

Me: What is that?

Him: love me, respect me, and never leave me.. Because when u give in my heart i expect it not to be toyed with..

Me: That's easy

Him: Im serious

Me: i do love you, i will respect you, and i don't see myself leaving you..

He put his hand on my cheek..

Him: i wish you knew what you getting yourself into...

Me: i know

He walked away from me and went to stand by the window...

I whispered to myself...

Me: What now?

Him: Im not Kenzo

Me: i didn't expect you to be him

I walked up to him and hugged him from the back..

Me: You want me, i want you so what's the problem?

He turned around and looked at me..

Him: i just wanna know that when the going gets tough you won't leave?

Me: Meaning?

Him: i mean just that

Me: Im not following

He walked over to the bed to taste the Strawberries and cream..

Him: i don't wanna be in a relationship with someone who still has a mindset of a child. I want a woman and you..

He looked at me from head to toe.

Him: Im not really sure what to label you

Me: Wow

Him: Im sure you have been dating boys all your life..

Me: so?

Him: Just know that I am not those boys you been dating, i don't do Milk and cookies i don't have time for games..

Me: i am not about to play games

Him: You and Kenzo broke up alot, i don't roll with that..

Me: Kenzo is still a kid..

Him: and what makes you?

Me: Okay Danzo i am not gonna go back and forth with you about this, if you feel like I'm not woman enough for you then fine..

Him: only kids catch feelings like that..

Me: then what are you saying?

Him: I'm saying i wanna know if you really ready to start a relationship with me?

Me: I'm ready Him: and you considered my terms?

Me: You want me to love and respect you..

Him: and? Me: And never leave you

He walked over you...

Him: and in return i will treat you like a princess, you will get everything that you want.. And Ofcause i will shower you with endless love...

He leaned over and kissed me..

Danzo and i we gonna make a great couple i can already tell, maybe dating a real man is something i need because at the end of the day i am not getting younger too.

18

TERRA

I don't know if i should say i had a great time with Danzo or what because all the time i kept on thinking about What im gonna Say to Kenzo. The was no intimacy between us, I was still on my periods but what we did most of the night was cuddle and talk....

One of the things that we talked about was announcing to the whole family that we in now in a relationship, i know Nazulu won't be really shocked about all of this because she already knows..

He had called home and asked for a family meeting off which we were all gonna meet this morning in the living room..

The drive from the hotel to the house was dreadful. I was scared, i was feeling bad about what was going to be announced, i was also worried about how Kenzo was going to react in all of this..

We arrived at the house and everyone was already waiting for us except for Banzi he wasn't there which was less stressful considering how he is..

Kenzo immediately picked it up when Danzo and i Walked in together..

Danzo: good morning, and thank you to everyone for coming to this meeting..

Kenzo was giving me a death stare, i was too ashamed to even look him in the eye..

Noxolo: What is going on?

She had a smirk on her face..

Danzo: That's a rhetorical question coming from you...

He held my hand..

Kenzo: Fuck me!

Kenzo rubbed his face with his hand..

Danzo: i think it's quite clear what's happening..

Nazulu: i think I'm lost

I looked at her like "are you being for real right now" this woman likes to speed up the reaction like a catalyst..

Danzo: maybe this will be more clearer

He pecked my lips..

Noxolo: Shut the front door!! You don't say! (shouting)

I couldn't read Kenzo's emotion now, i didn't know if he was mad or hurt..

Nazulu: Wow.. You two are a couple?

Danzo: Terra?

Me: uhm

It was very hard.. He put his hand around my waist..

Him: would you do the honours?

Me: y.. yes.. We are a couple..

There was silence for a while..Then Kenzo made his way to Danzo and attacked him. Danzo just let his brother throw a few punches at him while he maintained his composure..

Nazulu: Kenzo stop it!

Noxolo went and held Kenzo back..

Danzo was bleeding from his nose...

He laughed a little then looked at his brother..

Danzo: ill go wash up..

He started walking upstairs..

Kenzo: I'm still gonna fuck you up! Know you dead and buried to me!!! Dead Danzo you dead!! (shouting)

Nazulu clapped her hands in hopes of calming Kenzo down...

Nazulu: awukahle wena! (wait a minute)

Kenzo looked at me, i already had tears filling up my eyes..

He walked closer to me and i was scared..

Him: When i come back you better be gone, this house will not harbour Hoes..

He clicked his tongue and Walked away..

Noxolo looked at me..

Her: I've done did alot of things in my life that im not proud off but you..

She looked at me from head to toe all disgusted..

Her: i don't even know what to call you right now!

She walked out bumping me on the shoulder, i know she did that on purpose....

I looked at NaZulu..

Her: it will blow over..

Me: the whole Zulu clan hates me right now and you telling me it's gonna blow over?

Her: Don't be too dramatic Terra i have important things to worry about not a silly temper tantrum thrown by Kenzo. He will be fine..

She walked out too..

What got to me is how Danzo was reacting to this whole situation..

He let his brother attack him

he laughed his way through the whole Matter..

I walked up to his bedroom and i found him in his bathroom, he was holding a towel against his nose..

Me: Danzo!

He put the towel down and looked at me..

Me: What the fuck happened there?

He kept quiet...

Me: be a fucken human being, get angry! React to situations!
Show some fucken emotion!

Him: What do you expect me to do?

Me: Don't act like shit is not happening!

Him: i am not a person who reacts on his emotions! Now you need to calm down..

He walked out..

Him: im going to take a walk..

Me: Pathetic!! You are Pathetic!! Weak, and a sorry excuse of a man! (yelling)

He closed the door on his way out without saying anything...

Kenzo is about to kill us and Danzo is all calm about this situation..

Me: What did i get myself into?

There's only one person who can advice me better in this situation..

I set out to her room..

I didn't even knock i just opened the door and Walked in, she was laying on her bed reading a book..

Me: Kwanda i can't do this!

I said that while crying..

She sat up straight..

Her: What happened?

I sat next to her and laid my head on her thighs, she gently pulled my braids to the back..

Her: What happened Nana?

I couldn't stop the tears...

Me: i don't think I made the right choice with Danzo..

Her: What did he do?

Me: He.. He.. He talks bodily about wanting me to be woman enough for me but he is not even half of the man that Kenzo is!

Her: Calm down and tell me what happened

Me: He let Kenzo attack him, all he did was just laugh and now Kenzo is coming to kill us Im sure Danzo will be laughing all the way to the graveyard..

Her: i.. I don't know what to say..

Me: Danzo Is a bitch ass nigga, he has his panties on and i cannot deal with another female!

Kwanda: What did you want him to do?

Me: i wanted him to react and attack back, i wanted him to be angry and stand up for us! You know Kwanda Banzi is better of a man than Danzo right now.. Yes Banzi is a bit extreme but at least he doesn't let people intimidate him, instead he is the one who does the intimidating..

Kwanda: Maybe Danzo is not that type to react to anger...

I wiped my tears..

Me: Im going home tomorrow..

Her: Ohhh Terra

Me: Im going home i cannot do this or be with a guy who won't stand up for me, who is a female like me!

Her: i understand baby..

Me: ill come and say goodbye tomorrow morning..

Her: Its alright sweetheart..

I walked out of her bedroom, i do feel like i made a terrible mistake with Danzo i probably should have stayed with Kenzo....

19

TERRA

I needed some space from the Zulu clan just for a minute or so, i really need to breath and let everything out because this drama I'm too gold for it. I know that Kenzo is gonna come up in here and throw his weight around, im not looking forward to him torturing me and worse i cannot rely on Danzo because he finds everything that's happening as a joke..

I went up to my mom and she was in one of the bedrooms cleaning..

I threw myself on the bed..

Her: Mandisa I've just changed the bed linen..

Me: Im not dirty

Her: but still Nazulu Is very vigilant today

Me: Fuck that witch!

She twisted my ear..

Me: Mom ouch!!

Her: Learn to control your tongue young lady..

I kept quiet..

Her: What's wrong with you? You seem to be in a bad mood

Me: i just wanna come home tomorrow

Her: What happened? Did you and Kenzo fight again?

Me: more like we have broken up

Her: You two and breaking up

Me: Its serious this time around mom

She sat next to me...

Her: talk to me Ndisa

I looked at her and i didn't know how to break everything to her..

Me: ill be fine mom

Her: You act like i have never been 21 before

Me: that age comes with alot of problems

Her: Why don't you just focus on school, and take a break from boys a little?

Me: Its still December mom

Her: i know but, why not try to get another sponsor since the bursary people are not coming through. Or better yet get a job for this holidays and make some extra money..

Me: is Nokwanda my cousin?

Her eyes widened. I have a tendency of just saying anything that comes to my mind first..

Her: Where did you get that?

Me: i..

Her: Mandisa where did you get that information from?

Me: Nazulu said that in passing, im thinking Nokwanda told her before she passed on.

She stood up and went to wipe the dressing table..

She stopped after a few minutes and took a deep breath.

Her: she is your cousin

Me: Really?..

Her: Her mother is my big sister

Me: Why don't you like talking about your side of the family?

Her: Because soo much happened that cannot be forgivable

Me: such as what?

Her: such as you need to leave so i can finish my work

Me: Mom

Her: Mandisa please

Her voice was breaking clearly stating that she's starting to get emotional..

I stood up and walked out of the room. My mother is definitely hiding something but i won't push I'm just gonna let her be for now and hope she will tell me soon...

I went to the kitchen and poured myself something to drink while i sat at the table thinking..

The Zulu family is well known, respected

Advertisement

rich, and admired. I really thought that they were perfect because not even one scandal was ever displayed In public, they always appear as this picture Perfect family.. But being here for a few days has really opened my eyes into learning about some of the dirty laundry that this family has. After all who said money can buy you happiness? They more messed up than the kardashians i rather be with my poor family right now where there is love, than being part of a rich family where there is hate...

Danzo walked in as i was sitting there, he stood behind me and wrapped his arms around my neck while resting his chin on my head.

Him: How is the tension now?

Me: well Kenzo is not here so it's still peaceful

Him: Are you peaceful?

Me: Im fine Danzo

Him: But are you peaceful?

Me: Whatever you wanna call it

He whispered in my ear...

Him: i act like this because i don't like quarrelling, i am a very peaceful person

Me: i see

Him: But do you understand?

Me: Danzo it's how you are so there's nothing i can do or say.

Nazulu walked in..

Her: Don't mind me im just here to make my herbal tea

She boiled the kettle and took out the mug...

Her: Danzo have you seen Banzi?

Danzo: No mom

Nazulu dropped the mug she was holding and looked at Danzo all astonished..

Her eyes filled with tears, i really didn't know what was going on.

Her: You.. You just called me mom?

Tears fell with a smile on her face.

Her: do you know how many years i waited to hear you call me that

Danzo: ill be in my room

Her: Danzo!

Danzo: i called you that because you raised me and Kenzo, so it is appropriate to call you that after all you mothered us..

The smile from Nazulu vanished..

Her: Ofcause i.. I'm your Aunt

Him: Don't get it twisted

He walked away..

I didn't know what just happened.

Nazulu: Excuse me

She switched off the kettle and walked away..

I wasn't gonna let this go so i made my way to Danzo's room.
He was sitting on his bed holding a stress ball..

Me: angry at last?

He chuckled.

Him: You should know by now that I don't get angry it's useless

I went and sat next to him while laying my head on his shoulder.

Me: What is the stress ball for?

Him: i.. I was in the car when my parents had the accident so my arm was greatly affected. I constantly have to use the stress ball to prevent cramps and muscle spams.

Me: Ohw i see

He kissed me on my forehead

Him: Are you a seer?

Me: Why?

Him: You always seeing things

I laughed.

Me: Danzo?

Him: Yes?

Me: is Nazulu your mom?

Him: What makes you ask such?

Me: the scenario at the kitchen?

He squeezed that stress ball for dear life..

Him: my mother died in a car accident

Me: Then why did you..

Him: my mom died in a car accident can we now drop it?

Me: Sorry

He stood up and went to the balcony i followed him...

Him: You not a Zulu yet

Me: Meaning?

Him: some other things you not supposed to know..

What great secrets does the Zulu family have?

20

TERRA

[PREMEDITATED MURDER-PART 1]

The Zulu family was breaking apart so very bad. It used to be all of us around the dinner table, and now I only had dinner with Nazulu..

Danzo was keeping himself busy with work, we haven't seen Banzi for quite a while now and Noxolo well that one i can't really understand..

I stayed up very late waiting for Kenzo i really wanted us to talk about this at least just the two of us..

He walked in at 03:00am i was even tired and sleepy..

He looked like he had a few to drink but he wasn't really drunk. I stood up and looked at him, he looked at me too..

He started walking to the stairs and i stood in his way...

Me: Kenzo please just hear me out

He put his hands in his pockets and looked at me..

Me: first all i want you to know that i didn't mean to hurt you, it truly wasn't my intention. I love you but, we were not really working out you messing with other girls, sex tapes it was just too much.

Him: im not hearing you saying you leaving

Me: Please

Him: What do you expect me to do huh?

Me: i just want you to forgive me, i didn't mean to hurt you

He yelled in my face..

Him: But you did!! (yelling)

I wanted to cry but I'm not gonna let him break me, and in this situation tears will come across as me trying to blackmail him...

Me: but i didn't mean too

Him: Just.. Just stay away from me

Me: Kenzo..

He got closer to me

Him: You dead and buried to me you hear? Dead and buried!!

He started walking to the stairs then stopped.

Him: Im gonna need my money back, im sure Danzo can afford your registration fee

He continued walking, now that's crazy because i had spent some of the money, i was now left with R2500.. I don't wanna ask Danzo for money it will look weird.

I also walked to the bedroom and i found Danzo sleeping with alot of papers on the bed and his laptop..

I went to clear everything and pulled the duvet to cover him...

I kissed him on the forehead and walked out of the bedroom to the guest room...

I woke up the following day at 09:00, i went straight to bath so that I can go home because being here will only make Kenzo more and more angry. Maybe if i go he will find it easier to deal with everything...

Before i could even say goodbye to Nokwanda, i Walked downstairs to have breakfast first. Phela this will be my last time eating a full English breakfast, at home it's all about bread and rama..

When i got to the living room

Advertisement

the atmosphere was very tense. The whole Zulu family was there, Noxolo was crying one of the maids looked very Shaken up.

Me: Good morning

They looked at me

Me: is everything okay?

Nazulu: Sit down Terra

I sat down, i started getting scared. Danzo came and put his hands on my shoulders..

Nazulu: Carol our maid was to clean Kenzo's bedroom this morning. When she got there at around 07:00am she..

My heart started beating very fast

Me: She what?

Nazulu: found Kenzo hanging from the ceiling

Me: What?

Nazulu: I'm sorry

Me: No.. That's.. It's..

Banzi: We believe he hanged himself

Me: That cannot be..

Noxolo: it is, and all because of your bitchcraft!

Nazulu: Noxolo!

Noxolo: No mama it's the truth

I didn't care about Noxolo shading me, my heart was still trying to accept what i have just been told...

I saw the morgue people coming down with him in a body bag..

I stood up..

Danzo: Terra

I went up to them

Me: Please.. Open i wanna see him..

Danzo: Mash

Me: i wanna see him Danzo! (yelling)

They unzipped the body bag to reveal his face. I even saw the bruises around his neck that the ligature had left..

I put my hand over my mouth, my heart just sank..

They zipped the body bag and went..

Me: He.. He is gone forever Danzo.. (Crying)

Him: i know and I'm sorry

Me: i didn't know he was this hurt

He just held me and said nothing..

Two Detectives showed up after a few minutes we were still gathered in the lounge the maids had been bringing us tea every now and then..

I was hurt Yes but i can't imagine how Danzo is feeling, he has lost all his family now.

He was trying to be strong but i can see that he was broken..

Detective1: Good morning, i am Detective skhosana and this is my partner Detective rooi.

Nazulu: What can we do for you Detective?

Skhosana: first of all we really sorry about your loss, our deepest condolences

Noxolo: Thank you

Nazulu: again how can we help you?

Skhosana: Its protocol to ask questions in such a crime

Nazulu: There's no crime here, my Nephew committed suicide

Danzo: Its premeditated murder

Nazulu looked at Danzo..

Nazulu: i understand that you hurt Danzo but..

Danzo: my brother would never take his own life despite any emotional pain inflicted on him not even when our parents tragically passed on

Banzi: that is true, Kenzo would rather drink his pain away but killing himself that's far-fetched

Rooi: so you think he was murdered?

Danzo: Yes, and it was premeditated

Skhosana looked at the Constable

Him: Constable Bhele please get the forensics team to the crime scene

Nazulu stood up..

Her: wait a minute.. You cannot just go up in my nephew's bedroom and touch his things!

Noxolo: Mom

Nazulu: we have just found out that my nephew just committed suicide give us some space

The Detectives looked at us

Rooi: We will come back with a search warrant

Skhosana: may the crime scene be not interrupted in the meantime

Rooi: anyone who findles with the evidence will be implicated

They walked out..

Nazulu: Danzo Is this how you wanna respect your brother's passing?

Danzo: you know what gets to me? Every death that results in this family is always "an accident"

My parents dying was an accident, uncle Zulu dying was an accident the gun accidentally went off.. Now my bro..

He closed his eyes, then opened them again

Him: Kenzo's passing wanna be ruled as an "accident too"

Nazulu: Kenzo killed himself, he was found hanging on the ceiling!

Danzo: if we have nothing to hide then let's allow the police to do their job..

Nazulu: the media is going to have a field day "Suicide ruled out as premeditated murder In the Zulu family who is the murderer" the paparazzi is already at the gate waiting to Bury us.. Can we please lay Kenzo in peace without any issues?

Banzi: if Danzo suspects there's foul play then i say we go on with this investigation

Noxolo: ill go and lock his room so evidence cannot be tampered with

Nazulu: Since when do you guys defy me?

Danzo: Its not about you anymore Nazulu

Nazulu was acting rather strange in all of this..

21

NOKWANDA

[PREMEDITATED MURDER-PART 2]

I haven't had visitors lately looked like everyone was busy with their own things. Terra has been the most distant one and i was starting to get worried if she lost focus on the plan, she's really getting in too Deep..

The only person who was frequent in my bedroom was my little pum-pum she spends more time with me. Mbali is very cute and adorable, she takes after her handsome father..

One of the saddest things was that I cannot just walk around the house because although I'm dead but Somandlakazi's spell backfired very bad whoever i bump too can see me..

Mbali was busy with her coloring book and i was just looking at her.

Her: Mommy

I looked at her..

Her: Look

I kissed her on her head.

Me: Its beautiful baby

I stood up and went to get my cellphone and i called Tpee.
Terra is way In over her head and the Zulus are dangerous, i
really need her to be protected at all times.

I don't know how Tpee Is gonna react to this, being called by a
dead person..

Him: Tpee Hello

Me: Tpee Im glad you answered

Him: Hello?

Me: i know this is gonna sound strange but it's Nokwanda..

Him: is there someone there?

Me: Tshepi it's me..

Him: Hello?

Me: You can't hear me?

He hung up. That was weird for him not to hear me....

I went to sit with Mbali and the door opened, i thought it was
Nazulu but it was Banzi..

My heart skipped a beat, i was scared we haven't spoken ever
since he found out about me..

I stood up. He closed the door and came to me.

What i am very sure off is that he won't do anything stupid infront of his daughter, well i hope so..

He stood there and looked at me, i didn't know what to say..

Him: i have alot of questions

I am prepared to tell him the truth, i don't care about what Nazulu will say or think she can't hurt me more than she already has..

Him: promise you gonna be honest with me?

I nodded, he still looked at me..

Him: God i swear you still beautiful..

I smiled..

Me: You still handsome too

He chuckled..

Him: i think the obvious question will be are you de.. Are you dea..

He cleared his throat.

Me: i am dead

Him: but how? I mean you standing right infront of me and you look alive

I looked down..

Him: Kwash I'm confused

I took a deep breath..

Me: after i passed on, Nazulu couldn't let go. She trapped my soul here with the help of Somandlakazi

Him: Somandlakazi her spiritual healer who is helping her through this brain tumor ordeal?

Me: Yea Somandlakazi is actually a Seer, powerful witch of all time. She has lived for centuries

Banzi: I'm truly not following, im confused please find me

Me: She trapped my soul here, had a spell casted to make me appear like this. I was bleeding from my head but Somandlakazi managed to do away with that for the sake of Mbali

Him: my mother is practicing witchcraft?

I didn't answer..

Him: this is sick!

Me: i know

Him: so where too from here?

Me: We casted a spell to let me cross over but it didn't work

Advertisement

the biggest piece was missing

He folded his arms..

Him: and that is?

Me: You

Him: How do i fit in all of this?

Me: You have to let me go. All this guilt and resentment you have towards my death is holding me back

Him: You want me to let you go, from my heart?

Me: No I'll forever be in your heart. Banzi you need to forgive yourself because i have already forgiven you

Him: Nokwanda i hate myself for what i did to you

Me: it was an accident

Him: i pushed you, if it wasn't for me you would still be here. We would be raising our daughter together

Me: Banzi i don't belong here, i need to cross over. Nazulu already tried to make me human but it didn't work you cannot tamper with fate and destiny

Him: i am not letting you go

Me: Banzi

He came closer then grabbed me and kissed me.. It was soo weird because the only people who can have physical contact

with me are people who share the same blood as me and for Banzi to touch me, and kiss me it was very weird..

The kiss made me feel a bit of human again, my feelings were not fake i felt the connection between us getting stronger, the chemistry spiking and our hearts beating for each other. I didn't know what was happening..

He put his hands on my face.

Him: i am not going to let you go, if you here then that means fate is giving me a second chance to rewrite my mistakes

Me: Banzi no

Him: i don't believe in this witchcraft things but if there is a way to make you human again then i am all for it

Me: Banzi you cannot temper with fate, i need to go i don't belong here

Mbali got out from the bed and came to us, she opened her arms for me to pick her up and i did. She laid her head on my shoulder

Him: if you not gonna do it for me or you then do it for her, she needs her mother

Banzi is going about this the wrong way..

.

TERRA

I took some ice tea to the study were Danzo was keeping himself busy with work..

Me: wanna take a break?

Him: i have alot..

I went In and put the tray on the table then sat down opposite him. I looked at him as he tried so hard to ignore me..

Me: I lost him too. He ignored me again and continued

Me: Danzo at least talk to me, don't shut me out

Him: Im trying to work Mandisa. I felt tears nearing.

Me: i don't think he killed himself too, Kenzo would never do that no matter how broken he is

He put the pen down. Him: Im trying not to think about this

Me: Its okay to show emotions

He was breaking, he couldn't hold himself anymore.. I stood up and walked to his side, i laid his head on my tummy while he wrapped his arms around my waist...

Me: whoever did this to Kenzo, will be brought forward. There will be justice for him.

22

TERRA

[PREMEDITATED MURDER-PART 3]

Danzo and i went out for fresh air, we really needed some time out. Being in the house with all that's happened, was truly devastating and depressing...

Me: Are you gonna be fine with that cuppaccino?

Him: Im not hungry

He took a sip from his cup..

Me: the Detectives have not contacted you?

Him: not yet but I'll go down at the station to ask what's happening with the search warrant

Me: i don't mean to sound like a bitch or something but..

Him: But?

Me: did you see how Nazulu acted towards this Matter?

He looked at me..

Me: it was more as if like she had something to hide

Him: Im not surprised

Me: Do you think she?

Him: Everything is possible with that woman, even my uncle's death no one was found fault it was an accident thar was swept under the carpet

Me: There's alot that goes down in the Zulu household

Him: this is not what i came back for

As we were still enjoying our drinks and quality time i saw Danzo's facial expression changing he looked irritated..

Me: What's wrong?

He looked at the entrance, i also turned and looked..

Me: is that who i think it is?

Him: the one and only Tpee

Me: Wow

It was just amazing seeing Mr Thobekgale in person, i mostly see him in papers, Tv, and social media. He looked very hot you would swear he is 21 years old but In actual fact he was turning 33 soon..

After consulting at the reception he looked around and his eyes landed on me and Danzo

Advertisement

he made his way to us..

Why is he coming to us especially since he doesn't know us. His dreadlocks were very long now and he was wearing a hat..

Him: Danzo, i knew i spotted you right

Mixture of black and Indian..

Danzo: wad up Tpee?

Him: Im fresh as always.. When did you arrive?

Danzo: not that long

Tpee: and you didn't hit me up?

Danzo: We not friends

Tpee: your attitude still hasn't changed.. I read about Kenzo, im sorry.

Danzo: Thank you

He looked at me..

Danzo: i hope you not waiting for an introduction

Him: i got the introduction already

Danzo: Can you excuse yourself?

Danzo was just addressing this man with soo much disrespect.
Does he know who he is?

He stretched his hand to me..

Him: Tpee

I stood up and shook it

Me: Im Terra and i admire you alot Mr Thobekgale

Him: Tpee please

Me: Tpee

Him: Admire me?

Me: i read about you alot of times

Him: Good or bad?

Me: Good sir

Him: Im glad

He looked at Danzo..

Him: She's cute

Danzo: ya why are you still here?

Tpee: Come on dude let it go, it happened when we were very young

Danzo: give us some space

Tpee: space is what you gonna get

He started walking away but then came back..

Tpee: Strange as it is not i recieved a call from Nokwanda

Danzo laughed

Danzo: Nice one

Tpee: you should know by now that I don't joke,,

Danzo: so what did she say?

Him: i couldn't hear a voice was almost as if like the person on the other side was dead!

Danzo: Tpee i don't understand why you telling me all of this! Shouldn't you be telling Banzi?

Tpee: What exactly is going on in the Zulu household behind closed doors?

Danzo: What are you trying to achieve in this conversation?

Him: nothing, i was just satisfying my curiosity

Danzo: What goes down in my home has zero to do with you..

Tpee put his hand on his chest..

Tpee: ouch! That hurts deep down

Danzo: are you done?

Tpee: Yeah see you around

Danzo: How about never?

Tpee: i will see you around i promise

Danzo: Yeah whatever man!

Tpee looked at me..

Him: Was nice meeting you

Me: like wise

He then walked away.. I looked at Danzo

Me: You can't be addressing people with such disrespect

Him: he is not bill gates!

Me: uhm okay

His cell rang..

Him: Its the detective i have to get this..

He answered.

Him: Hello.. Yes this is he.. When are you gonna start.. That's great.. I'm down for that.. Thank you... Bye..

He put his phone down

Me: And?

Him: They have the search warrant to go and search at the house

Me: That's great news isn't it?

Him: still won't change that Kenzo is gone!

I stretched my hand to his..

Me: At least he is going to get justice

Him: i hope

so, they searching the house and later we will be getting postmortem results it will show if he committed suicide or if he was murdered

Me: see all is well

Him: i hope all this will be done before his funeral, i want us to lay him to rest knowing who did this

Me: And we know who did this

I hope they search and find alot from Nazulu so she can be arrested..

23

TERRA

[PREMEDITATED MURDER-PART 3]

We were back at the house because the cops were there turning everything upside down. I was more concerned if they weren't gonna find Nokwanda, but they were more focused on our bedrooms and Kenzo's bedroom..

The postmortem was very quick, i thought it was gonna be done at least after a few days but hey rich people always get everything they want with just a snap of their finger..

Detective Rooi was with us, we were all in the living room while Detective skhosana was upstairs searching with other cops..

Rooi: the reason why the postmortem was done so quickly, is because we acknowledged the family's request of wanting to Bury your loved one with your questions answered. Another reason was that the Coroner found this an easy case to review that's why we have the results now..

Nazulu: i still say that we should have been left to grieve in peace all of this could've been done after the funeral

Banzi: i think getting it over and done with now is good

Noxolo: i agree with Banzi

The Detective tossed the file across the table..

Him: The results came back confirming that the deceased was intoxicated that night.

Me: He was drunk when i spoke to him that night, but not that drunk.

Rooi: We still gonna get to that..

He looked at us..

Him: this is not suicide, he was murdered

Danzo: i knew it!

Nazulu: How is that possible? What exactly are you saying?

He showed us Kenzo's pictures, they were taken during the whole postmortem process i found them disturbing...

Rooi: he died from asyphixia

Banzi: that would be possible because he hanged himself

Rooi: further tests proved that he was strangled before he was hanged. The deceased was already dead when he was hanged

Me: i don't think I'm following

Rooi: someone used a ligature to strangle him while he was on the bed sleeping, then when he was dead they hanged him

Noxolo: i am very speechless

Rooi: We think that this is an inside job

Nazulu: are you suggesting that we did it?

Rooi: possible

Nazulu stood up

Her: Detective what are you insinuating?

Rooi: You know Mrs Zulu you have been a difficult one ever since we started with the investigations?

Nazulu: so? Wait are you trying to say i killed my own nephew whom i treated like my own child?

Banzi: i wouldn't be surprised

Nazulu looked at Banzi then he looked at the detective..

Nazulu: i think you should leave now

Rooi: We still searching, plus i have to ask each one of you questions

He looked at me..

Him: You specifically since you were the last to see the deceased alive

I swallowed..

Danzo: Mash would never do that, she loved him

Nazulu: Everyone is a suspect, Terra needs to be treated like one too

Nazulu was starting to be boring..

Rooi: shall we?

Danzo: Detective

Me: Its alright, i have nothing to hide

Noxolo sent out a mocking laugh

I stood up and we went to the other room..

Him: ill ask you a few questions, it's standard procedure

I was mad scared

Advertisement

i mean one would be in such situations...

Him: What was your relationship with the deceased?

Me: We were.. We were exes

He wrote that down..

Him: Why did you break up?

Me: because our relationship was not going well, he was cheating and uhm.. Alot was just happening

Him: didn't you pursue a relationship with his brother?

Me: uhm

How the hell did he know that.

Me: Yes i did, but Kenzo and i we were already separated by then we had broken up

He nodded while writing..

Me: am i arrested?

He chuckled

Him: No like i said it's standard procedure

He looked at me..

Him: i know a killer when i see one,and you are not one.. You can go join the others

I went to sit down next to Danzo he held my hand.

Rooi: Okay now i will ask Mr Danzo to come with me

Noxolo: Danzo would never kill his own brother

Rooi: Its standard procedure

Banzi: Fuck that!

Detective skhosana came down with the other cops..

Rooi: i was still interrogating everyone

Skhosana: No need, we have found the killer

He looked at the Constables..

Him: Cuff her!

The Constables went to Nazulu and they started cuffing her..

Nazulu: What is this?

Skhosana: Mrs Nora Zulu you are arrested for the murder of Kenzo Zulu, you have the right to remain silent. Everything you say or do will be used against you in the court of law. You have the right to a lawyer if you cannot afford one, one will be appointed to you

Nazulu: i didn't do nothing, you have the wrong person!

Skhosana: says the evidence found in your bedroom

Nazulu: i was framed!

Nazulu is capable of alot of things i just didn't know she can be capable of murder too..

Banzi: and that is for what you did to Nokwanda!!!

Nazulu was crying and still maintained her innocence...

Detective skhosana looked at us.

Him: You better find her a good lawyer the evidence we have can take her down forever

They walked out..

We were all just shocked..

Noxolo finally broke the silence after a while..

Her: i don't think mom did it

Banzi: aghh i believe she did! That woman is capable of alot of things

Noxolo: she didn't murder him, mom is not like that!!!!

I looked at the balcony and saw Nokwanda..

Me: Im coming

I went up to her, lucky no one saw her..

Me: Are you trying to get caught? Are you crazy?

Her: This cannot wait

Me: What is it?

Her: Nazulu didn't kill Kenzo

Me: What?

Her: Im dead Terra remember? I can see my kind and Kenzo is..
He is not at peace because the real killer is still free

Me: Nokwanda i..

Her: Terra Nazulu is innocent!

Me: if it's not Nazulu then who is it?

Her: Its...

Me: Nokwanda talk!

She had tears in her eyes..

Me: What's wrong?

Her: Im sorry

I stepped away from her..

Me: Wha.. Nokwanda What..

She closed her eyes and took a deep breath..

Her: Its.. Its Danzo

I couldn't believe the words that were Coming out of her mouth..

Her: Im sorry

Me: No..

Her: listen to me, you need to help expose Danzo.. Kenzo says there's a hidden camera in his room. He used it to do the sex tapes with other girls, you need to find out where it is, it has full evidence of what happened that night..

I started stepping backwards

Me: No..

Nokwanda: Terra I'm sorry

My knees grew weak, i felt light headed.. The corridor was spinning. I heard Nokwanda talking but everything fell on deaf ears.. I was dizzy it was just alot happening to me.. My body was going into shock.

24

TERRA

I opened my eyes and i could clearly see that I was in Danzo's room. He was sitting beside me playing with my fingers.

Me: What happened?

He put his hand on my forehead..

Him: You fainted

Me: i fainted?

Him: Yes i found you in the corridor

Me: Corri.. Corridor?

I started thinking about what happened, it all came down crashing to me like a plane. Danzo killed his brother. I quickly got out of bed..

Him: Are you alright?

Me: Im.. Im okay..

He got out of bed too and came to me, he tried to touch me but i stepped back.. He gave me an awkward look.

Him: Mash what's wrong?

I started using my hand blowing air on my face.

Him: You have a fever?

Me: i think so

Him: ill get you panado

Me: No! (shouting)

He looked at me..

Me: i mean not until i bath First

He could see right through me that something was wrong..

Me: Let me go bath First

Him: ahhh okay

I rushed out of the room and made my way to Nokwanda's room. I got there and she was having a family moment with Banzi and Mbali, they were playing Monopoly..

Me: Ohw sorry i didn't mean to disturb

Nokwanda: nonsense!

She stood up and came to me..

Her: How are you feeling now?

Me: Im okay

Her: That's good

Banzi stood up...

Him: ill go and bath Mbali, im sure Khanyi's mother is on her way

Nokwanda: Ohw i forgot that they going to spur for Khanyi's birthday, is she gonna be okay?

Banzi came and put his hands on her shoulders then kissed her on her cheek..

Him: You worry too much, her and Khanyi are very close to each other

Her: i guess i do worry alot

Him: That's human of you

They looked at each other all smiling..

I cleared my throat..

Nokwanda: ohh sorry

Banzi went and took Mbali then left the room. Nokwanda was still all smiles, if she was light in complexion i would actually see her pink cheeks...

Me: that was sweet

Her: that is what keeps me going

Me: He has forgiven Nazulu?

Her: No and i don't think he will

We went to sit on her bed and she ran her hand on my back.

Her: are you sure that you okay? It's me who you talking too

I took a deep breath then exhaled.

Me: i don't know Kwanda it's just, are you sure about this?

Her: i don't think Kenzo would lie

Me: Why would Danzo kill his own brother? His own last family? Just doesn't make sense

Her: Kenzo stands by his word

Me: What if he is angry huh? I mean Danzo took me away from him

Her: Mash Kenzo is dead, he has no reason to lie. Dead people tend to remember how they passed on especially if it was a tragic death.

Me: is he here?

Her: No he is not

I stood up and walked around

Her: We need to find the hidden camera video thing in his room

Me: video thing?

Her: Whatever you wanna call it, he used it to videorise the girls he used to sleep with

Me: You think it holds what happens?

Her: he says so.. It was on that day because according to him he was planning to bring a girl along

Me: then where is it?

Her: he forgot

Me: great, just perfect

Her: You just need to know his hiding places

Me: Fine I'll try

Her: Check the coast and I'll come along with you

Me: Okay

I checked if there wasn't anyone in the corridor and when it was clear

Advertisement

Nokwanda and i made our way to Kenzo's room In search of the tape..

We searched and searched but no video cam popped up. I sat down on his bed..

Me: We not gonna find anything

Her: Don't give up now

Me: Kwanda we looked everywhere

Her: Don't loose hope

I looked around and noticed the teddy bear facing his bed. Ever since he bought me the teddy bear it always sat on his top shelf it was never moved.

I went and got it...

Nokwanda: i believe so too, Im starting to loose hope

I shook the teddy bear and it had something inside..

Her: What?

Me: i think there's something here

I tore up the teddy bear with a scissor and we found the cam

Me: got it!

Her: great now we can check what happened

I know all his passwords so i took his laptop and connected the cam and we checked all the videos..

It was the sex tapes i felt disgusted watching them..

Her: Im sorry that you have to go through this

Me: Its okay

We got through every tape and there wasn't any of the night that he passed on..

Nokwanda: no..no..it has to be here

Me: Its not here!

Her: Danzo must be one step ahead of us, he is that smart

Me: How? The teddy bear was sealed you saw

Her: Well i..

Me: Nokwanda was it all a lie?

She looked at me.

Her: lie?

Me: Are you pinning this on Danzo?

Her: What?

Me: Where was Banzi before the murder? And why did he magically appear the morning when Kenzo was found hanging on the ceiling?

Her: What are you trying to say?

Me: did you and Banzi do this and now you pinning it on innocent people? Is that why all of a sudden you lovy doxies?

Her: are you hearing yourself?

Me: admit it, you jealous.. You just using me to better your relationship with Banzi by taking Nazulu down.

Her: i would never do that!

Me: The video cam, has nothing!

Her: i don't know, Kenzo sa..

Me: Hey! (shouting) you will never say that word ever again!

Her: See what they doing to you? They already playing mind games. Danzo is trying to turn you against me!

I stood up..

Me: Stop it!!.. Just stop it!!

I looked at her..

Me: You are sick! You no better than Nazulu!

Her: Terra..

Me: No you were using me to worm yourself into Banzi's life again

Her: i wish you can see this mind control his doing to you..

Me: You the one with mind control! You are evil Nokwanda i hope you burn in hell when you cross over!!

I walked to the door..

Her: Terra!!

I made my way to Danzo's room, i was hurt i was upset how can Nokwanda do this to me? My own damn cousin using me like this. He looked like he had just finished bathing. He had a towel wrapped around his lower body..

Him: What's wrong, are you okay?

I went up to him and hugged him..

Me: Nokwanda played with me! How can I be stupid!!

Him: Nokwanda?? What are you talking about??

Me: Nokwanda is not dead, she is out to make you look guilty.

Him: find me

Me: Nokwanda poisoned me by saying you killed Kenzo, she was talking about tapes!

Him: What tapes? And how is Nokwanda not dead?

I sat on his bed, he came and knelt down in front of me holding my hands..

Me: Im doubting that she's even dead, probably one of her scams!

Him: do you believe her?

He looked at me right in the eye

Me: No! She's just a crazy dead bitch!

Him: You have alot of explaining to do because I'm not following what you saying...

Me: ill explain from the beginning

He came and sat next to me.

25

TERRA

Danzo was walking around the room after i had told him about everything, and i mean everything..

I told him about Nazulu, Somandlakazi, what they supposedly did to Nokwanda i just gave it all in..

Me: say something

He stopped and looked at me..

Him: i am..

Me: shocked?

Him: You can say that. I mean i have always known my Aunt to be evil but not that evil

Me: i know

I looked at him again..

Me: What are we going to do?

Him: nothing

Me: Nothing?

Him: if Nokwanda and Banzi did this? Then the truth will come out

Me: Danzo

Him: Mash listen. Whatever is done in darkness has a way of making it in the light. Going after them will only mean I'm guilty, i will not fight for the truth to come out because at the end it has its own way of coming out

Me: Wow wise words

Him: im just happy to have you by my side when all of this happening. I just lost my brother, now the Zulu family is trying to make me the bad one? You know i always knew that Nazulu treated me and Kenzo like outcasts because we were never in her womb for 9 months

Me: Danzo

He smiled a little.

Him: Its true babe, just that i was in denial to accept what was clear to me

Nazulu is evil to be treating her sister in law's kids like outsiders..

Him: basically in my life i am only left with you and no one else

Me: ill never leave you

Me: i know you won't

I went and kissed him..

Him: i know we haven't been dating for that long but i love you

I smiled at him..

Me: i love you too

He kissed me again...

I am relieved that i was done with my periods, i only had spotting every now and then and the kiss was escalating..

Now i understand when Danzo Said "i never had a man, I've been with boys" because the way he was touching me, squeezing me, making me loose my mind, taking me to cloud 9 and back was absolutely amazing..

My body, soul, and mind craved for him more and more the love i had for him was burning me inside.

He gently laid me back on the bed and came ontop of me..

Him: Are you sure about this?

Me: Im sure

Him: i love you soo much

Me: i love you too

We continued kissing and playing with each other...

I have had sex before, but i have never made love.. Today it was my first time making love to someone.

Danzo was just Perfect in every way

Advertisement

he made sure to make it an everlasting experience for me. He wasn't slow, he wasn't fast either he was just perfect and i felt every bit of him inside of me..

Fortunately he had condoms and we used them.....

When we were done he laid back while i laid my head on his chest . he started stroking my braids..

Him: so?

Me: so?

Him: How was it?

Me: horrible!

Him: Really? That's why you were moaning and calling my name?

Me: i was trying to tell you to stop

Him: You were more like "give it to me"

Me: That doesn't sound like me

Him: i promise you

I lifted my head up and looked at him.

Me: it was perfect

He pecked my lips..

Him: glad you enjoyed

Me: Im tired I might pass out

Him: Now? I thought we were going for another round?

Me: that round was long let me rest for a while

He kissed me on my forehead. There's no perfect way to explain a moment where the man you love runs his hand in circles on your naked butt while you sleep peacefully..

.

NOKWANDA

Kenzo and i we were in his room busy searching for the "tape".

I know Kenzo is looking for justice but this, is making me look bad..

Me: Kenzo like i told you, Terra and i already searched there's nothing in here!

Kenzo: he was here before you and Gummy i know it!

Me: How?

Him: The teddy bear he exchanged it

Me: Kenzo

Him: No the original teddy bear had Terra's perfume, this one doesn't, smell it

Me: Kenzo i know that you need help and also you trying to look out for Terra but i cannot keep on doing this! It makes me look crazy

Him: Nokwanda please, Terra has to know about the monster in Danzo before i get buried.

Me: What happens if you get buried?

Him: Then im gone forever

I put my hands on my forehead and thought for a while..

After like 20min the door opened and someone walked in while whistling..

I got my head up and looked at the door as it closed.. It was Danzo.

Me: What are you doing here?

Him: Good question and shouldn't it be directed to you?

I saw right through him. Danzo was evil, sinister, diabolical, cursed, he had a very cold heart. A heart of a killer and although i am dead but he made me scared..

Kenzo: don't worry he cannot hurt you, you are dead!

Me: What do you want from me?

He gave me a conniving smile..

Him: i thought Mash was tripping but it's really you.. Nice meeting you sister in law

Me: What do you want?

Him: Stop filling up Mash's head with nonsense

Me: You killed Kenzo!

He folded his arms..

Him: so?

Me: You bastard!! How can you kill your own brother?

He laughed..

Him: Banzi is my brother and the only reason why I'm gonna spare you your dead life!

Kenzo: ohh shit i remember now!

I looked at him

Kenzo: Noxolo and i we were adopted, Danzo and Banzi are blood brothers!

I looked at Danzo..

Me: Kenzo did nothing wrong

Him: he fucken put his hands on me!

Me: That's why you killed him?

Him: i wish. I just needed to get revenge on my mom and unfortunately Kenzo was the bait

Me: You sick bastard!

Him: sick naaa, sinister yes..

Me: i will bring you down, i will make sure that Terra knows how evil you are

Him: Terra doesn't wanna see you, she hates you and I'll make sure it stays like that! He whistled his way to the door

Me: How did you do it? What did you do with the tape?

Him: like you said earlier "im one step ahead"

Me: How do you know i said that?

Him: Really Kwash? Me: Who are you?

Him: more like what i am! He opened the door.

Him: Remember something. Just because you dead doesn't mean i cannot hurt you! You half human anyway

He closed the door on his way out.

26

NOKWANDA

I would really like to help Kenzo but i don't know how. I am really trying but i just don't know where to turn or who to consult with about this and things are much worse now because he has turned Terra against me. Terra sees me as an enemy...

Kenzo: Looks like we hit a dead end, everyone is gonna be convinced that Nazulu did this, my real killer will never be found

Me: Im sorry Kenzo

Him: Don't be at least you tried

Me: Danzo carries alot of evil, his heart is cold as ice.

Him: i never thought that his anger would cloud him like this

Me: Why does he carry soo much anger and hate, it's not healthy.

Him: he never dealt with Nazulu and Wilfred killing his father and making it look like an accident. He never got over the abuse that Wilfred put them through while they were kids

Me: He never got help for that?

Him: No, instead he moved overseas. Unlike Banzi you know what to expect, but Danzo is dangerous because he doesn't show his evil side that much

Me: His still hurt, he needs professional help to deal with what happened

Him: Danzo Is a human being that you will never understand you cannot read him.

Me: Im just scared for Mash

Him: We tried all we could to warn her, so now it's up to her.

Me: What's that red light flashing at the corner of your ceiling?

He turned and looked..

Him: i don't know i have never seen it before

Me: Really?

Him: Yes

We went closer to it..

Him: Someone must've placed it there recently

Me: Yes but what is it?

We looked closer again..

Kenzo: Shit!

Me: What?

Him: this motherfucker is smarter than i thought

Me: Im not following

Him: Danzo Is watching us, he has been watching what happens in this room the whole time

Me: That's why he was able to know what i said to Terra earlier about him being one step ahead

Kenzo: Son of a bi.. I mean son of Nazulu!!!

Me: We better go,best we talk in my room

We both went out of his room and went to my room..

Me: Danzo Is not God he is human, the has to be something we can use against him to make him fall

Kenzo: That guy is smart, he plans all his dirty work perfectly

Me: so that would mean after Killing you He went to plant the evidence in Nazulu's room

Him: i believe that's what happened

Me: i can't tell Banzi about this he will find it hard to believe plus they are brothers and he hates Nazulu

Kenzo: You know Mandisa is going to varsity next month, i was soo happy for her that i wanted to surprise her by paying her tuition fees

Me: You truly love her don't you?

Him: i did

We kept quiet for a while...

Me: wait a minute, if you were gonna pay for her tuition fees that means she doesn't have funding?

Him: she doesn't

Me: Why didn't i think of this?

Him: Think of what?

Me: i know who can bring Danzo down

Him: Who?

Me: Pen and paper please

Him: a pen and a paper can defeat him?

Me: You don't know how powerful that combination is

He got me a pen and paper..

Him: What are we gonna do? Write his name until he dies?

We both laughed..

Me: no silly we gonna write a letter

Him: To?

Me: Tpee and have Terra deliver it

Him: could work plus the last time i checked Danzo hates Tpee

Me: That's why it will work, the key is for him to read it in front of her

Him: How is that helping?

Me: You'll see

I continued writing the letter..

..

TERRA

I woke up after a while and Danzo was laying next to me. He was on his laptop though..

Me: Hello

He turned and looked at me

Me: work?

Him: something like that

He leaned over to kiss me but i yawned, he pulled back..

Him: my kisses are that bad that they bore you?

Me: Don't be crazy

I put my hand around his neck and pulled him closer for a kiss..

Him: You still owe me a round or two

Me: i know and i will give you when I'm done being tired.

We continued kissing and something weird happened. I suddenly heard Nokwanda's voice, she was busy calling my name. It was almost as if like she was next to me i was a bit uneasy about this..

Danzo: are you alright?

I smiled at him..

Me: im fine

We continued kissing and still i heard Nokwanda..

Him: What's wrong?

Me: Can i go somewhere?

Him: need a lift?

Me: No love it's not that far

I kissed him on his cheek and went to Nokwanda's room.. I don't know how she did that though..

Me: What the hell?

Him: The Technique worked

Me: What do you want?

Her: Terra...

Me: if you here to sob and emotional blackmail me, save it!

Her: i just need one big favour

Me: What?

She handed me a white envelope

Her: Take this to Tpee and make sure he reads it in your presence

Me: i hope you didn't mention that you dead!

Her: Really?

Me: Fine I'll take it to him

Her: Thank you

Me: Anything else?

Him: That's all

I walked out with the letter in my hand, what does it contain? It was just written "Tpee" outside the envelope..

I bumped into my mother as i made my way downstairs.

Her: i have been trying to get hold of you

Me: What's wrong?

Her: Its Maryjane

Me: What about her!

Her: She's in hospital

Me: What happened?

Her: he went far this time, he poured acid on her

Me: What!!!

Her: You need to come home

Me: tomorrow I'll come back, now i just have an errand to run

Her: i hope you do come home, you soo caught up in here. This is not your home and i heard about Kenzo. There is no reason for you to stay here anymore

Me: uhm mom we.. I have to tell you something

She looked at me, this was very difficult to address.

Me: i.. You know Danzo?

Her: Ofcause i know Danzo! He is Kenzo's brother

Me: We..

Her: You what?

Me: we dating

She kept quiet while looking at me, then after she slapped me across the face

Her: i didn't raise no hoe! (yelling)

I looked at her i just didn't believe she did that.

Her: is that why you still here because of him?

Me: Mom

Her: tomorrow i want you home! It's time you start thinking about your future and school! Leave all this bitching around do you understand me?

Me: Yes mam!

Her: Good.. Now let me get back to work

She walked but stopped.

Her: and you are to end this nonsense of a relationship with Danzo! It's not even 3 days since his brother died and you already moving on to the next i am disappointed in you sies!!

I wish my mom could understand that we cannot help who we fall inlove with..

27

TERRA

I went to Tpee's workplace as i was asked too by Nokwanda to drop off the mysterious letter..

Danzo asked the house chauffeur to drive me, i just told him that i needed a few things from town. The Kenzo situation was still Trending because paparazzi was still at the gate waiting for a member of the family to come through the gate so they can be all up in your face and space..

I had read a few newspapers that were in the car what they wrote about Nazulu was cruel, they were crucifying her off which was very unfair despite how evil she is, but she doesn't have to suffer for other people's sins that being Nokwanda and Banzi killing Kenzo.....

Thobekgale Pharmaceutical was a very fascinating place to be in. Security was too tight i had to fill in my everything at the gate, then the security guards will call the receptionist and inform them that im making my way in. Before you can even make it inside, they search you at the door running that mental detector on you like you coming here to bomb the place or something..

When i walked in through the door, i heard a robotic voice talking..

"Welcome to Thobekgale Pharmaceutical" it repeated that twice..

Just when i thought i was done with the security check, i wasn't. They took my finger prints and ran them through the data Base the lady doing that looked at me..

Her: She's clear

The other security guards took me to a private room where i had to strip naked and Wear a very tight jumpsuit i wasn't even allowed to wear shoes, had to walk bare-foot and leave all my belongings there i only had the letter with me..

Security: What is that?

Me: a letter that im supposed to deliver to Mr Thobekgale

Security: Can you please hand me the letter?

Me: No you not supposed to open it, only Mr Thobekgale is supposed too

Him: letter please

I gave it to him and he put it through some machine. When the machine showed a green light, he took it out and gave it to me..

I went to the reception, and the receptionist was soo formal that she even had her hands nicely placed at the back.

Her: Welcome to Thobekgale Pharmaceutical, May i be off help?

Me: im here to see Mr Thobekgale

Her: do you perhaps have an appointment?

Me: i spoke to him over the phone and he is expecting me

Her: Just one minute

She worked that PC for a few minutes then after looked at me..

Her: i am sorry but Mr Thobekgale did not inform me that you will be coming today

Me: must he always run everything by you?

Her: Its standard procedure that the company knows who comes in and goes out

Me: call him he is expecting me

Her: i will do that

Me: the name is Terra.. Danzo's gf and im here to see him about Nokwanda

Her: very well

She picked the phone and called him..

Even calling his office was a hassle

Her: This is Zizi, number Z450 from the reception please put me through to Mr Thobekgale's office.. Thank you.... Good day sir and sorry to disturb but i have a Terra here to see you.. She says she has an appointment with you.. She said she is Delo..
Dano

Me: Danzo

Her: Danzo's gf and is here to talk to you about Nokwanda.. Yes sir.. Thank you bye..

She looked at me..

Her: You are through

Me: hallelujah

The securities escorted me to his office which was on the 5th floor. Even the elevator was highly secured..

When the elevator opened they told me to go in alone..

The whole of 5th floor was his, there was no other offices than his..

I passed his assistant's desk she wasn't there..

When i got to his office, the door was half opened and he was with what looked like his daughter i waited a bit before disturbing..

The girl was sitting on one of the chairs and rapping

Advertisement

Tpee was occupied with some paperwork..

Girl: "bitches ain't shit, and they ain't said nothing.. a 100 mother.."

Tpee: poonkie pie

Her: Sorry daddy

She started humming..

Tpee got a bit frustrated..

Him: Naledi

Her: but im bored

Him: i told you to go with Mommy

Her: Mommy went to the hospital, im scared of hospitals

Him: then sit there and keep quiet, daddy is trying to work

She played with her fingers and looked down..

Tpee put the pen down.

Him: im sorry you can sing

She shook her head no

Him: You mad at me?

Her: You not my daddy anymore

Him: Well that's sad that means I'll have to go and get me another poonkie pie and buy her a unicorn on her birthday

She looked at him..

Her: Im joking you my daddy

Him: well then can daddy get a kiss?

She stood up and went to kiss him..

Him: i love you

Her: i love you too

That was very sweet, i walked in as they were hugging..

Me: uhm security cleared me

He looked at me as i walked in to sit on the chair...

Him: Why don't you go get ice cream, i heard they have new flavours

Her: Okay

Him: after getting the ice cream come back to my office

Her: Okay daddy

She walked pass me and greeted me, she was soo sweet and adorable..

Me: She's beautiful, how old is she?

He gave me a serious look, i stood there frozen not knowing what to say or do. He was making me nervous with his intimidating look..

Me: Can i sit?

He still looked at me...

I put the letter on his desk with my hands Shaking....

Me: Im here to drop this off, im sorry for disturbing you

I walked out with my heart beating fast. I don't know how normal people talk to this guy because he is intimidating i wonder how his wife even has sex with him such an intimidating guy.. Nokwanda said he is a big teddy bear underneath it all but all i see is another Wolf underneath it all..

I got to the reception..

Me: i would like to leave

They got me the security guards who walked me back to the changing room, all i wanted was for me to be out of there..

When i was done dressing up we walked to the door, but the metal detector started going off..

Me: What's going on?

Security: Please stand back

No one wanted to touch me at this point, the security called for back up and i was starting to get more and more scared..

The Receptionist came to me..

Her: Mr Thobekgale wants you to come to his office again as in like Pronto..

I was escorted back to his office with guns like some theif or something..

We got to his office and this time around he was sitting ontop of the table.

He looked at the security guards and nodded, they left..

Him: Sit please

My knees got more weak as i made my way to sit on the chair..

He had used a blue bandana to tie his long ass dreads he made it a ribbon..

He held the letter then looked at me..

Him: coffee?

I shook my head no he still made me nervous...

He pulled his chair and sat down.

Him: Are you Nokwanda's cousin?

I swallowed..

Me: Y.. Ye.. Yes

Him: does Danzo know that you here?

I shook my head no..

He took some file and went through it..

Him: What's your favourite colour?

Me: uhm.. Red

Him: Haven't seen a coffin that's red in colour

Me: Ohw

Him: which cemetery would you like to buried at?

Me: Sorry?

He closed the file and looked at me..

Him: im helping you to plan your funeral

Me: huh?

Him: Danzo Is gonna kill you

Me: i don't think that's appropriate

Him: Its not supposed to appropriate it's the truth

I stood up..

Me: with all due respect..

Him: Sit the fuck down im not done

I sat down, he spoke with soo much authority....

He took out some forms and asked me to fill them.

I read through and it was bursary forms..

Me: i don't understand

Him: You don't have too just fill in

Tpee is complex, i don't understand him not even once. I thought he called me back to tell me what the letter said but now his confusing the shit out of me..

28

TERRA

After signing the papers i went. I seriously don't know what is going on right now, i don't even know what Nokwanda wrote in that letter but all i know is that everything that was happening was very weird.....

The meeting took longer than i anticipated especially with all the security check i got back home a bit late and i went straight to Nokwanda's room. I found her walking around we needed to have a serious talk...

Her: You back, how did it go?

I closed the door and went up to her..

Me: What's going on?

Her: Im not following

Me: What did you write in the letter?

Her: did he read it in your presence like i asked?

Me: No

Her: Why?

Me: i got scared and walked out, he is very intimidating

Her: Well did he give you a bursary?

Me: i filled bursary forms

Her: That's good, that's good

Me: Nokwanda What is going on? What are you not telling me?

Her: i simply asked him to give you a Bursary that's all as my dying wish

Me: That's all?

Her: That's all

Me: How did you know that i needed one?

Her: ghost instincts

Me: Ohw

Bitch was lying, i know the letter covers alot of things than what she's telling me now.....

Her: i just want you to reach your dreams. I couldn't reach mine i died before i could even be a pharmacist, so I want you to be something in our family..

Me: if you say so then

Her: Im glad he could help you

Me: Thank you, i guess

Her: Anything for family

I walked out of her room. That was very awkward but also it was good news because i seriously need funding. To be getting a bursary from one of the best medical colleges, surely is a blessing...

I went to Danzo's room and he was dressing up..

Me: going somewhere?

He turned and looked at me..

Him: Its 19:30, where have you been?

Me: i know i got really caught up in what i was doing

I sat on his bed..

Him: what where you doing?

Me: shopping

He gave me a serious look..

Me: Fine, something weird happened

Him: something like what?

Me: Tpee offered me a bursary

He laughed...

Him: Are you kidding me?

Me: No look here

I took out my copy of the documents and showed him.. He read through..

Him: What the???

Me: i know right it's quite shocking

Him: How did this happen?

Me: Meaning?

Him: You went out of here saying that you going shopping you didn't mention that you going to meet up with my arch enemy

Me: well i..

Him: How did you even get this?

Me: Nokwanda pulled in some strings for me

Her: The dead Nokwanda?

Me: Yes

Him: This is bullshit! You need funding for what?

Me: Im going to school next month and the bursary i applied for was taking forever and i need this funding

Him: Why didn't you come to me? I am a CEO of a huge company, maybe not as huge as Thobekgale Pharmaceutical.

I didn't understand why Danzo was all worked up about this..

Me: Your company is dealing with something different from my field. Plus once you mix business with pleasure it's bound to end ugly.. I don't want our relationship to sink because of this

Him: this is very disrespectful to me, and what did i say about disrespecting me? And how the fuck would he give you a bursary if you not even gonna be going to his college?

Me: Wow Danzo can't you just be happy for me? Getting a bursary from Thobekgale Pharmaceutical is such an achievement

He looked at the papers again then looked at me..

Him: You right and im sorry

No matter how much he was holding back

Advertisement

but i could see that he was angry deep inside that he was even literally Shaking..

Him: i need to go and fetch my relatives from the airport

Me: Ohw and im, im going home tomorrow

Him: Why?

Me: My sister is in hospital

Him: What happened?

Me: She.. Her boyfriend poured acid on her

Him: What did she do?

Me: Excuse me?

Him: for him to react like that she must've done something

Me: Danzo it doesn't matter what she did, he had no right to do what he did

Him: i am just asking out of curiosity

Me: No you trying to promote abuse

Him: No one can wake up one morning and decide to pour someone with acid

Me: You are being insensitive!

Him: i am just asking out of curiosity!

Me: You know what, i can't discuss this with someone who clearly is an ambassador of abuse!

He looked at me and clicked his tongue..

Him: let me go before my fist gets tossed across the room

He started walking to the door..

Me: Sorry what are we tossing across the room?

He didn't say nothing he banged the door behind him..

At least now i know that Danzo can get angry..

I went to the guest room and bathe then after i went downstairs to eat i was shocked to see Nazulu. She was with Noxolo and looked like a wreck. She looked like she hasn't slept for days, her clothes were torn, her weave was messy..

She was eating a chicken salad im sure she hasn't had such a meal up in there....

Me: Nazulu

She looked at me and her eyes were red and puffy..

Nazulu: xolo can i talk to Terra?

Noxolo looked at me then went, this girl doesn't like me for shit...

I sat down..

Me: How are you?

Her: Let's cut the "i care part" we both know how we feel about each other

Me: uhm okay

Her: We will start with the Lobola negotiations after the funeral

Me: What?

Her: The sooner the better

She was putting me in a tight spot, especially since my mother doesn't really like my relationship with Danzo..

Me: That's quick

Her: like i said the sooner the better

Me: My mom.. She..

Her: Your mom is a maid, she will take whatever we offer her. Plus she should be happy that you gonna be married off to the Zulu family it's every girl's dream!

Me: but..

Her: do you know how many girls would Jump at this opportunity to Marry one of the Zulu Brothers?

I kept quiet..

Her: Your cousin suggested you and since you know most of our family secrets you are the one

Me: ill talk to my mother tomorrow when i go home

Her: You going home tomorrow?

I nodded..

Her: You no longer going home

Me: Why?

Her: elders and relatives of the Zulu family have landed all the way from Kwazulu-Natal. You need to be here for the duration of the funeral helping around njengomakoti (like a bride) so they can see that our Danzo didn't make a mistake by choosing you

Me: Yooh

Her: Its early for "yooh" you need to go wear a long dress, and a doek. We have already made reservations at Sizzas you need to be dressed in a respectful way

Me: Nazulu i have responsibilities at home, my sister is in hospital i have to prepare for registrations

Her: Ohw about that, Danzo should decide if you should go to school or not

Me: What? It's always been my dream to go to school

Her: You are about to be someone's wife Terra there's no longer time for games. You need to be by Danzo's side as he runs the Zulu company.. We need to train you how to handle the pressure of the media and Everything, how to be a good wife your family will teach you

This was too much for me..

Her: now do you have a dress with you?

I shook my head no..

She dropped her fork..

Her: Amen kanti ngifelani (why am i dying)

Me: i don't like dresses that much

Her: We'll get you something from Nokwanda's clothes

Me: Okay

Her: one more thing the elders and the family as a whole shouldn't know about your past useless relationship with Kenzo, you have always been with Danzo are we clear?

I nodded my head yes..

Her: Good let me finish eating then we'll go prepare..

29

TERRA

I had just finished preparing myself. I was wearing Nokwanda's traditional dress with a matching doek and my sneakers. I was not used to such clothing i felt a bit uncomfortable..

Nokwanda was with me in the guest room.

Her: You look beautiful, like a true bride.

I looked myself in the mirror and this was just too much for me. The only reason why I'm doing this is because I love Danzo with all my heart and my sister would say in such situations "never say no to a marriage proposal because it's a blessing. If you say no you might never getting married again"

I looked at Nokwanda..

Me: Im nervous

She came and held my hands..

Her: The Zulu family needs you more than you need them always remember that

Me: Yes plus i know most of their dirty secrets

Her: exactly

She looked down..

Me: What's wrong?

She looked at me..

Her: do you love him?

Me: i do

Her: i don't know if it's Somandlakazi's stones talking right now or you

Me: i also don't know but what i know is that i love him

She smiled at me..

Her: if you love him and he makes you happy then i won't stand in your way

Me: i just wish that you were still alive then you would guide me. You know this family more than i do

She chuckled..

Her: know that you have more power and control over them. Babe they will never find anyone who would agree to turn a blind eye on half of what's happening in this family so you have the power over them just remember that

I nodded my head..

Her: You look beautiful

Me: Thank you

The was a knock at the door..

Me: Who is it?

Voice: Danzo

I looked at Nokwanda

Her: Im not hiding he knows me..

Me: Come in

He opened the door and Walked in..

He was wearing a different outfit now.. It was a traditional tshirt, blue jeans, and white sneakers he looked handsome..

He looked at Kwanda..

Him: Kwanda

Kwanda: Danzo

Nokwanda looked at me..

Her: ill be in my room

She then hugged me..

Her: Enjoy tonight

Me: Thank you

She then walked out closing the door behind her..

Danzo looked at me and smiled..

Him: You look..

Me: ancient?

He laughed..

Him: no.. You look like a true Zulu bride

I looked at the dress one more time..

Me: Not my style but I'll survive

Him: my grandmother is very traditional so..

Me: i understand

He held my hands...

Him: Im sorry about earlier, i didn't mean to sound insensitive

I got closer to him..

Me: Im sorry too

I kissed him...

Him: i love you and i seriously wanna marry you

Me: i love you too

We kissed again..

Me: There's something i need to talk to you about

Him: What's that?

Me: it has always been my dream and my mother's dream for me to go to varsity. I have been fighting to get to med school so very hard.

Him: uhm okay

Me: unlike you i never had everything given to me in a silver platter, i was never born with a silver spoon in my mouth. My father passed on a few Years ago and we couldn't event get the money that his company owes us so me going to school is a big deal to me and my family.

Him: i understand and i wouldn't wanna stand in a way of you and what you worked hard for

Me: Really?

Him: Yes. Quite Frankly i don't want a housewife, someone who is going to sit in the house and do nothing all day

Me: exactly my point. I mean i was scared when Nazulu told me that you will have to decide if i should go to school or not

Him: this shouldn't even be up for discussion

Advertisement

you are going to school next month and even though I'm not happy with the choice of your funding but i guess I'll live with it

I hugged him..

Me: Thank you

That was a relief, and i also think that my mom will ease up a bit if she hears that i can still go to school, marriage won't stand in the way of that..

Me: i love you

Him: i love you too

He grabbed my Ass..

Him: You still owe me

Me: well since you have proven yourself that you gonna be the best hubby ever how can i say no?

We kissed again..

I had no doubts anymore in me that Danzo was gonna be a perfect husband to me. I don't care how many times that Nazulu can throw me under the bus or make my life difficult but as long as i have my one and only then I'm fine. I love Danzo and im not even gonna think twice about marrying him, no matter how much his family hates me but as long as he loves me then I'm happy..

We weren't completely naked, he just took off his jeans and i had taken my dress up a little it was my turn to ride him like there's no tomorrow..

I was sitting ontop of him as he held my tiny waist and helped me to slide my way down on him..

I wasn't used to him yet so it was a bit painful i had slept with Kenzo several times but he wasn't as big...

Me: awww..

Him: painful?

I nodded..

Him: You gonna be alright in no time

It was a bit of a hustle but we finally got all of it in..

I felt him deep inside..

Him: Are you sure that you alright? I mean we can stop if..

Me: I'll be fine

Pumping for a minute or so was still painful and uncomfortable but with him kissing me and gently massaging my breasts made me wet and that helped, it made the whole experience less painful..

As we went further on it became more enjoyable than painful..

The harder i rode him the more and more he squeezed my small breasts hard moaned....

I came first, and when he was about to come he got me off him so that he doesn't come inside of me.. We got a towel then wiped ourselves clean and fixed our outfits..

Him: Are you not in pain? Will you be able to walk properly?

Me: Im fine love don't worry

He stretched his hand to me..

Him: Are you ready to meet the rest of the family?

I stretched my hand to him too..

Me: Im ready

Him: Then let's go Mrs Zulu the 3rd

We walked out of the guest room while holding hands..

"Mrs Zulu the 3rd" i like the sound of that..

30

TERRA

I was expecting to find the kitchen full of the Zulu family but to my surprise it was just Nazulu and an old woman sitting on the chair. Another woman who looked like she was on her mid 30s was standing by the sink, and then there was a guy he looked like he was in his 20s he was standing there playing with his phone..

Nazulu looked at me and Danzo

Nazulu: our couple has finally decided to join us, bona nibahle njani (look how beautiful you are)

I didn't know what to say so i just stood there..

Danzo made his way to the old woman and knelt on one knee in front of her, then held her hand..

Danzo: Zulu elihle, thank you for gracing us with your presence

She put her hand on his head, then after he stood up..

I was left standing all confused if i should also kneel down and greet or what..

Danzo went on to greet the others.

Danzo: Aunt Mimmy

They hugged..

Her: Sakhi.. Don't expect me to call you Danzo igama
owalithathaphi khona lelo? (where did you get that from)

Danzo laughed..

Him: You will never change

Her: Its good to see you, im glad that you are back to take over
on the family business

Danzo: i had no choice

He went to greet the Nigga..

Danzo: Cousin sihle

This cousin sihle was also cute, i guess good looks run in the
Zulu family..

Nazulu held my hand and brought me closer to the old woman..

She wasn't that old though..

Nazulu: Zulu this is Terra elesintu bathi ngu Mandisa (her
cultural name is Mandisa)

She looked at me..

Nazulu: kusho ukuthi ke Zulu uMandisa lo wuye osekhetliwe
ukuthi ashade uSakhi (Mandisa is the one who was chosen to
marry Sakhi)

The way that everyone was trembling around this woman, they made me tremble too even Nazulu herself was scared of her...

We were all looking at her waiting for her approval as if like it matters the most..

She put on her glasses then looked at me for a while. She then took them off..

Her: She's not bad, just that uphelele (she's skinny)

Nazulu: awu kanti leyo into engalungiswa (that Matter can be fixed)

Her: shono ke ukotiza ufunani la, we haven't paid Lobola (why is she here we haven't paid Lobola)

Nazulu: we just wanted the whole family to know her

Her: Nora you always doing things your way and not the Zulu way. Le oyenzayo asiyazi kaZulu (what you doing we the Zulu family is not familiar with it)

Nazulu kept quiet and looked down...

Her: i don't have a problem with this girl kodwa we must respect her family. We must pay Lobola for her then she can come move in..

She turned around...

Her: Sakhi

Danzo came to her...

Danzo: Zulu

Zulu: awuyise lengane yabantu la idabuka khona (take this child back to where she comes from)

Danzo didn't protest we walked upstairs to the guest room to get my clothes leaving this Zulu woman yelling at NaZulu..

We got to the bedroom and Danzo hugged me...

Him: im sorry my grandmother is very traditional when she heard that you have been crashing here all along she didn't like that

Me: Its okay

Advertisement

plus it will give me time to go and visit my sister and prepare for registrations

Him: You asked me something that if we get married am i gonna stop you from going to school and my answer was no

I looked at him..

Him: now im asking you for something too

Me: What is that?

Him: after the Lobola negotiations i want you to move in with me ill get us a place that's gonna be close to your school

Me: i thought your grandmother said im gonna live here

Him: i want us to have our own place

I smiled at him..

Me: id like that very much

.

NOKWANDA

Banzi walked in my bedroom, i was chilling as always since i had nothing to do....

He looked a bit down, like something was bothering him...

Him: Hey

Me: hi

He came and sat next to me.

Me: something bothering you?

Him: You can say that

Me: What's wrong?

Him: after Kenzo's funeral, i wanna go back overseas to play soccer again

Me: Ohw

Him: i just wanna be away from here and everything that has happened running the Zulu company was never my dream. My dream has always been to play soccer and now since Danzo is taking over and becoming the rightful head of the Zulu family there's nothing left for me here anymore

That was a bit hard to digest, Banzi is moving far away that means he won't even get a slight chance to visit my grave..

Him: i don't trust Nazulu not even one bit so.. Im taking Mbali with me

Me: What?

Him: she is my daughter

Me: but that means Mbali will never know my grave if you take her that far away from me

Him: i will make sure that Mbali knows about you always. You are her mother she deserves to know you

I was getting emotional i stood up and went to the dressing table..

Him: i love you Nokwanda. Always have and always will, but like you said too you don't belong here. You cannot suffer the same way even after death you need to RIP letting you go doesn't mean that ill forget about you. You will always be in my heart

were you belong. Im just letting go of the anger i had torwads your death

After he had said that, i felt the change in me. I saw a bright light from above shinning on me. I felt the burden of pain and sorrow being taken away from me i felt more joy and at peace..

I looked at myself and i was wearing a white dress, i was glowing i didn't appear human anymore i was more like a spirit..

I looked at Banzi..

Me: You broke the spell, you set me free.. Im free at last

Him: i guess for you to be free i just had to let you go. Fixing my wrongs meant that i had to be selfless and let you go..

I have been waiting for this ever since, and i am more at peace that Tpee read the letter which i asked for him to protect my cousin for me in all ways from the Zulu's..

Him giving her a bursary means that he took my words seriously..

I then saw a few Angels in the room one of them looked at me and smiled..

Her: Its time to go home

I looked at Banzi one more time.

Me: i love you, and ill always watch over you and Mbali

It was difficult on his side to see me go he even had tears that were ready to fall..

Finally i was free, finally im going home were i belong because i didn't belong here in the world of the living..

31

[3 WEEKS LATER]

I have been back at home for a while now, unfortunately i couldn't go to Kenzo's funeral because we didn't wanna alert the relatives that i knew him and that we had a relationship, as far as they supposed to know is that Danzo and i we dating and we have been dating ever since...

I was sad that i couldn't attend Kenzo's funeral but then there was nothing i could've done about the situation..

My mom did attend though and she told me that the funeral was big almost all the Zulu family and relatives were there. She told me that they were a big family and very successful too..

Although i couldn't attend but i was glad that he was laid to rest finally even though his killer hasn't been brought forward yet but i believe that one day God will come through for him..

Nazulu was cleared from all charges of murder she had a good lawyer that managed to prove that she was framed in all of this,so the case was closed for now because there were no leads whatsoever

It was a sunny Saturday afternoon, my sister and i we were sitting at the back yard under our big mango tree eating mangoes. My sister's wounds haven't completely healed as yet we just thankful that her face was not affected in all of this..

Danzo and i we haven't seen each other ever since the day he drove me home but he calls me every now and then. i miss him alot and i hope that my mom agrees to all of this wedding thing..

Maryjane: cannot believe Its January already

Me: Tell me about it, Christmas felt like it was just yesterday

Her: ya but our Christmas was different from the previous ones, we had cake for a change

Me: Mom really did budget this time around

Her: she did

We kept quiet for a while..

Her: So Monday you going to register

Me: Yeap Its finally happening

Her: and you got a bursary from Thobekgale Pharmaceutical that's big

Me: Tell me about it

Her: So how is registration gonna work? Is Tshepiso Thobekgale going to pay?

Me: He sent me a letter that i should take to school on the day of the registration then they will clear me

Her: That's good.. Im just glad that you have funding babe thats the most important thing

Me: true that

Her: We must go out and celebrate tonight

Me: with what cash? Plus you still hurt

Her: im better and i have friends who are loaded remember?

Me: How can i forget

We continued eating our mangoes in peace..

Her: What's wrong?

I looked at her..

Her: You not yourself this days

Me: Its nothing

She looked at me without saying anything...

Me: i just miss Danzo

Her: Ohw but he calls you though

Me: ya him calling is way different than me being with him

Her: Well you know mom is very much against yall's relationship

Me: Do you think she's gonna allow when they come for the Lobola negotiations?

Maryjane: Are they even coming?

Me: What do you mean?

Her: Babe Its been 3 weeks now are they still coming?

Me: i still have faith that they will come

I am a bit disappointed Because they promised to come right after Kenzo's funeral but Christmas has passed already and new year passed too still they haven't came..

Her: Maybe they still coming

Advertisement

let's have faith

I was very excited about this Lobola thing but now it looks like Danzo was making me hold a Pole it doesn't look like Its gonna happen anytime soon. Even when he calls he doesn't even mention it..

I looked at my phone.

Maryjane: he hasn't called?

Me: No even yesterday he didn't call, my please calls are even finished now

Maryjane: Well i have R5 we can go and you'll call him at the public phones

Me: i thought you were gonna buy Compral tablets with that

Her: ill survive

Me: What if you start feeling pain at night?

Her: babe im fine now lets go plus the walk will do me good

We stood up then washed our hands and took a walk to the public phones at least they were not that far..

We got there and i went to pay the R5 at the counter..

Girl: You can take number 4

Me: Thank you

I went to the phone and called him, his phone kept on ringing and ringing without him answering. When i was about to give up someone answered, it was a girl..

Her: Danzo's phone Hello

I wanted to say something but my throat raised no words i was surprised that a girl would answer his phone....

I could even hear her and Danzo talking in the background...

Her: Danzo stop

It was even a bit noisy where they were..

Danzo: Just one last round come on

Her: Nigga im even on your phone right now

Him: Who is it?

Her: i don't know the person is not talking.. Hello

Me: h.. Hi

Her: uhm can i help you?

Me: Just.. Tell him Mash called

Danzo: Who is it?

Her: She's saying she's Mash

Danzo: Shiiiiit!

Her: Who is she?

Danzo: give me my phone

Her: No who is she? Are you fucking other girls?

I was so hurt that i didn't know what to say or do at that instant, i couldn't even put the phone down...

There was a bit of a struggle for a while then he finally got hold of his phone..

Him: Mash baby Its not what you think it is..

I didn't know what to say hearing his voice hurt me even more that i couldn't stop crying..

Maryjane: Ndisa what's wrong?

Danzo: Momo i swear akusilento oyicabangayo (Its not what you think it is)

Maryjane: What's happening?

Danzo: Mash please say something Nana

Maryjane took the phone from me and put it down...

Her: Yini Ndisa? (what's wrong Ndisa)

Me: he..he.. His sleeping with other girls

She put her hands on her head all shocked and a bit hurt too as if like i just told her that mom is dead..

Her: hayi Ndisa ungasho (you don't say)

My phone started ringing, i took it out and it was him..

Maryjane: switch it off

I switched it off...

Her: lets go home babe

She held my hand and we walked home, i was shuttered first it was Kenzo now Its Danzo kanti what's wrong with me? Why can't i just find the right guy

I kept myself busy the whole weekend so that i couldn't think about what Danzo did to me. I was beyond hurt, history was repeating itself. Maybe this was Karma, all that i did to Kenzo was coming back to bite me in the back but at the same time he also did me bad alot of times i don't know why Karma decided to only visit me. I didn't expect Karma to visit him anymore because it wouldn't make any difference his dead now..

I am taking my mother's advice im going to be fully focused on my studies and not allow Another boy to come and confuse me. Im getting this degree for myself, my mother, my sister, and my late dad im also doing it for Kenzo who always believed in me and my dreams... I am willing to work hard so i don't give Tshepiso Thobekgale a reason to withdraw the bursary and think that he has made a mistake by funding me..

That Monday morning i woke up very early and prepared myself for the day ahead, i know Its gonna be one long ass day ive seen several times on Tv registration queues being long and taking almost the whole day. I was gonna go alone my mother only had money for me even if she had taxi fare money for Maryjane too she wouldn't be able to come along because she was still hurt her wounds were still trying to heal i don't want other students pushing her around and hurting her.....

Before i left the house my mom and i prayed first for God to protect me and for everything to go accordingly..

I was a bit scared, no i was hella scared taking this journey alone. I do not know Where SMU is i have never been there before, but from people who know it they told me which taxis to take and also that it is situated in pretoria ga-rankuwa next to Gorge mukhari hospital..

My mom and i left together that morning i was scared to walk alone to the taxis because it was still dark. When she went to Wait for the bus i went to the taxi..

I only had money for taxi fare and R20 to get a pie that's all that my mother was able to budget..

The taxi got full quickly because people were going to work so the was a glimpse of hope that i was gonna arrive early..

As the taxi took off i went through my phone and there was nothing interesting other than Danzo's missed calls and messages, he really wanted to talk to me so he can explain himself because according to him he did nothing wrong, all of this was just a big misunderstanding..

I ignored him because i knew that if i talked to him he was gonna mess with my head.....

.

I finally arrived at SMU after what seemed like forever and the university was not as how i pictured it to be. I thought i was gonna walk into something that looks like UJ or UP or even Wits because ive seen those varsities on Tv but SMU was not one of those..

The buildings looked a bit old and dull, although they were trying to give it more colour and what not but it wasn't your typical university. Nevertheless i didn't care about that all i cared about was that im in a med school finally!!

I walked around totally lost, other students were arriving too with their parents

Advertisement

some got in through the gate in expensive cars and some of us need to find our way on foot..

I didn't know where too from the gate but i asked security and they directed me to a place called "sports complex" which was very far from the gate Apparently that's where the registrations are gonna take place..

I walked to that place on foot and it seemed like i was never gonna get there. It was extremely far and the sun was now coming out..

After what seemed like decades of walking i finally arrived and i was escorted to where i was supposed to sit. It was like a stadium with alot of students already sitting..

As the queue started moving i took my phone out and went on Facebook to keep myself busy until i get inside the building....

I made it inside the building at around 10:00am that's how far back i was you know students who were driven here killed us...

I thought maybe it would be better inside but it was worse, there was different fauculties and different departments. You had your Residence, Meals, Finance etc..

I went to the Dental fauculty and at least we were not alot.. They gave me my form and time table then after that i had to go for financial clearence which was a long queue too...

When i got to the front i produced the letter that was sent to me from the Thobekgale Pharmaceutical. The man who was helping me was a bit shocked...

Him: How did you get this?

Me: i applied

He looked at me and called his colleagues..

I started getting scared, am i in trouble? Will they allow me to register? Is this fraud? Alot of things were running through my mind..

Him: You the first and the only student in this varsity to be sponsored by such a well known successful company. You should tell us how you got it so that some of our students can apply too..

Me: i sure will

He went back to his computer then after gave me back my papers after making a few copies..

Him: You have been cleared

I stood up and went to another station until i was done, i completed the whole registration at 16:20. I was hungry, thirsty, tired all i wanted to do now was to go home and sleep..

After registering for residence i had to go to town at South point to get the key to my room before all rooms get occupied..

I went out and there was a bus that transported us to South point from SMU...

I was worried now because it was late and i might not find taxis to go home and since my battery died my mom has Probably called and now she's mad worried too..

I got at South point at past six there was also alot of students there and i had to wait my turn. I kept on wondering if im gonna have a good roommate are we gonna get along is she well mannered those kind of questions filled my head..

I got the key to my room at around 20:00 i was on the 4th floor room number 405 block A..

I went to check the room out and it wasn't bad, my roommate has made it in first before me because her luggage was on the right side of the room...

She walked in as i was still busy checking, she was a beautiful yellow bone and a bit short, from how she was wearing she looked like she comes from a well off family....

Her: hi

Me: Hey

She came to shake my hand

Her: im Lerato

Me: Im Terra

Her: My roommate?

Me: Yes

Her: Nice you beautiful by the way

Me: You beautiful too and thanks

She went to her side of the room..

Her: are you also sleeping over?

Me: No unfortunately i have to go home i don't wanna worry my mother

Her: ohh home is close?

Me: Yes and you?

Her: Im from free state so since Orientation is starting on Wednesday ill be here until Friday

Me: Okay

Her: are you gonna find taxis to home? Its already late the taxi ranks are closed now

Sleeping over is another problem i don't wanna worry my mother more, and worse i don't have blankets or any toiletries for that Matter, not to mention food too...

Me: Can i please borrow your phone?

Her: sure

Me: Can i use your airtime ill pay it back

Her: Its okay

Me: Thank you

I had no choice but to call Danzo to come and pick me up...

He didn't take that long to answer lucky for me i have memorised his number..

Him: Hello

Me: Hey Its me Mandisa

He kept quiet for a while...

Me: Danzo?

Him: Im still here

Me: i know this is gonna sound weird but i need a favour

Him: Talk

Me: i was registering today so i... Everything took longer than i expected. Now im stranded at South point i can't get home Its late and there's no taxis

Him: manje mina ng'ngenaphi lapho (how does that affect me)

Me: i was hoping that you would pick me up

He laughed..

Him: ohh let me get this straight wena you wanna talk to me when it suits you neh?

Me: Danzo i don't wanna fight

Him: Whose fighting?

I kept quiet..

Him: only wanna talk to me mowufuna ama favour what am i your chauffeur?

Me: Its not like that

Him: let me tell you something

Me: Im listening

Him: uyahlanya yezwa? (you are crazy)

Me: You know i should've known better than to waste my roommate's airtime

I didn't wait for him to reply i just hung up..

I sat there all worried about my mother, she probably has a heart attack wherever she is...

33

Danzo left me with no choice but to sleep over at res. I was mostly worried about my mother who probably is very much worried about me too. I laid on my bed and shed a few tears, i was hurt by what Danzo did to me but most of all i was missing Kenzo i knew that with him he was gonna come through for me anytime..

My roommate was eating Kfc right in my presence with her friends. It was hard for me because i had to sleep with an empty stomach, i didn't eat all day i even had a headache. Kfc seemed like the only place opened for us at this time, and i doubt that i was gonna get any concrete meal with just R20 there..

It was quite evident that my roommate comes from a very successful family, from the way she handles herself she wasn't rude or anything don't get me wrong and the clothes she wore together with her phone..

I heard them whispering they were asking if they should give me something or what, and i just remained still as if like im sleeping..

Someone should've warned me that in varsity you get alot of students who are above your way and status of living my concern as for today is will i fit in????

.

There was a knock at the door probably was more of her friends, she stood up and went to the open. I heard a grown man talking..

Him: evening

Roomy: evening sir

Him: We looking for a Terra Mhlongo, she's supposed to be in this room

Roomy: uhm she is here, i think she is sleeping

Him: Okay thank you

Her: No problem

The door closed, and for a while everyone kept quiet..

I then felt someone sitting on my bed and i felt their cold lips coming in contact with my neck..

I slowly turned around and it was Danzo..

A part of me was happy to see him

Advertisement

i didn't care what time it was all i wanted was to just get home

Him: let me take you home

I got out of bed and wore my shoes, then took my things and looked at my Roomy who couldn't stop drooling over Danzo with her friends..

Me: Thank you for letting me use your phone earlier

Her: You welcome.. Ohw can i have your number please

She came to me and gave me Her phone and i saved my number..

Her: ill call you to check if you arrived safely

Me: Okay no problem

Danzo and i Walked out. He was attracting alot of eyes i won't lie.

He was Holding a can of flying fish i don't even know how they let him in with alcohol...

He thank the security when we passed them then we walked out to his car..

We went inside and i strapped the seatbelt ready to hit the road..

He didn't take off right away, he looked at me..

Me: Thank you for picking me up

Him: We need to talk

I knew what he wanted to talk about but i wasn't in the mood...

Him: Can we talk?

I nodded. Its not like i had a choice if i say no he probably is gonna leave me here...

Him: Saturday afternoon when you called i was out with a couple of friends both male and female.. We were going hard on shooters that's all that happened

Me: Okay

Him: What exactly did you think happen?

Me: Nothing Danzo

Him: if its like that then why you mad?

I shrugged my shoulders..

Him: next time learn to let me explain because now you hurting yourself with something that didn't happen. I love you, i wanna be with you alone so why would i fuck around im not 18 anymore

I kept quiet..

Him: before i take you home i wanna show you something

Me: Okay

We drove around until we were in some neighbourhood..it was dark so i couldn't see clear where we were....

We stopped at this house which was dark the lights were off..

He got out of the car, so did i..

We walked up to the door and he unlocked then we walked inside..

He switched on the lights and everything was just scattered around. There was furniture all around that was still covered with plastics.. I could even smell the fresh paint..

I looked around and it looked like they were still working on it..

Him: this is what has been keeping me busy

Me: Its beautiful even though Its not finished

We walked upstairs and it had enough rooms for at least a family of 6...

Him: this is the master bedroom

The bedroom was also under construction..

Me: i don't understand

Him: i was having this house fixed for us i bought it just like i said i will

My eyes opened very wide and my jaw dropped..

Him: i wasn't tripping

Me: Its.. Its very beautiful

Him: You like it?

I nodded..

Me: i do like it

Him: i have one more surprise for you

He put the can of beer on the dressing table, and then took off his tshirt..

Him: this is the reason why ill never cheat on you..

He had a tattoo of my face on his left breast underneath it was written "Mandisa the love of my life"

I just couldn't believe it..

Me: When did you get it?

Him: Think on the 16th of December i forgot

He left me truly speechless..

Him: You can come and touch it, Its not fake

Me: i can see Its not

He put on his tshirt again...

Him: so name one girl who would agree to sleep with me after seeing this?

He took out his phone and showed me the day he got the tattoo, the date was 15th of December..

Him: and when did you think i cheated on you?

Me: i..

Him: Im listening

I was highly embarrassed...

Me: Fine im sorry

Him: for?

Me: thinking that you were cheating on me

I really didn't know what to say i was embarrassed that i thought the worst of him..

He held my hand and ran his thumb at the back of my hand..

Him: You must learn to trust me okay?

Me: Okay

He pulled me closer and kissed me..

But before things got a bit steamy i pulled out....

Him: What's wrong?

Me: i need to get home

Him: at this time?

Me: Yes my mom is probably worried

Him: Don't you think she will be mad with you showing up at 23:00? Which taxi is still available at that time?

Me: but..

Him: but nothing, we can spend a night here then ill drive you home in the morning, you'll tell her that registrations finished late and you didn't find a taxi, so you slept over at the Res

Me: i guess you right

Him: Im always right

He picked me up and i wrapped my legs around his waist then we walked up to the bed..

34

The first thing we did when we woke up the following day was to get breakfast, i really needed to fuel up because i didn't have anything to eat even last night.

I enjoyed every hour and every minute of last night, we made love alot of times and lucky for me he had condoms with him..

I love Danzo and i am gonna marry him...

Me: so when are we permanently moving in?

Him: as soon as the Lobola negotiations are done, plus Its close to school so you will travel

Me: That's better

Him: Are you ready to go home?

Me: well i don't want too but i have too

He looked at me..

Me: i just enjoy spending time with you

Him: You enjoy spending time with me or you enjoy what i give you?

Me: Just take me home nigga

He laughed while we walked to his car..

Me: How was Kenzo's funeral?

Him: it was big

Me: i wish i attended it

Him: i know but we didn't wanna alert the elders

Me: so when are you coming to my house with Nazulu?

His phone rang...

Him: Can you please check who it is?

I checked and it was Nazulu..

Me: Its your Aunt

Him: Just ignore it

I did as i was told..

We arrived at my house at around 11:00am, i noticed a car parked next to the gate..

Me: Who is that?

Him: That's my Aunt

Me: What is Nazulu doing here?

Him: We have to talk to your mother remember?

I started freaking out knowing how crazy my mother can be sometimes she probably gonna chase them out with hot water..

Danzo and i Walked in while my mother and Nazulu were sitting in the lounge having tea..

Me: sanibonani

Only Nazulu answered, Danzo also greeted and we sat down..

Maryjane was standing at the door that led to the kitchen watching everything..

My mother gave me a look that it was hard to read..

Nazulu looked at Danzo..

Her: ive been calling you bokkie

Danzo: Yeah i know

You can say whatever you wanna say about Nazulu

but this woman is beautiful and knows how to dress up..

My mother looked at NaZulu..

Mom: i guess this is not a social call or visit?

Nazulu: unfortunately not

The atmosphere was very tense, all i wanted was for the ground to open and swallow me right there..

Nazulu: My So.. I mean my Nephew and your daughter have been seeing each other

Mom: Kenzo?

Nazulu: Cha ngisho uDanzo (i mean Danzo)

My mother looked at me..

Her: kanti bowungathandani noKenzo? (weren't you dating Kenzo)

I nodded..

Her: So what am i hearing now?

Danzo: Ma..

Mom: Angikhulumi nje nawe (i wasn't talking to you)

Danzo looked down and kept quiet...

Nazulu: if you could only let us Explain.. Yebo Mandisa and Kenzo were dating im not denying but they broke up when Kenzo broke Mandisa's heart by sleeping with other girls. So uDanzo lo was there for Mandisa throughout the whole break up and heartache that is how they became close

Mom: im still waiting to hear why you here

Nazulu: im still getting there

Danzo held my hand..

Nazulu: uDanzo would like to Ask for Mandisa's hand in marriage

Mom: They have been dating for how long now? 2seconds and already he wants to marry her?

Nazulu: What matters is that they love each other

Mom: ya..

There was a knock at the door..

Mom: Maryjane can you please get that

Maryjane went to answer the door...

Mom: nje mina i don't understand what's going on here serious

Nazulu: abantwana mabathandana thina sizothini? (when kids are inlove what are we gonna do)

Mom: We talking about people who knew each other for maybe 2 seconds

Nazulu: Anything is possible

Maryjane walked in the room with Tpee himself he was with some white woman..

I immediately stood up and went to greet them.

Mom: Are they also here to ask for your hand in marriage?

Me: No mom this Mr Thobekgale he is the one who is going to fund me

My mother stood up...

Mom: i apologise for my lousy comment. Please have a sit

They sat down..

Mom: Can we offer you something to drink?

Tpee: No we are fine thank you

Tpee looked around..

Tpee: Are we interrupting something?

Danzo: Yes we..

Mom: You interrupting nothing

Tpee: That's good because im a very busy man so if i didn't come today then Terra's funding was gonna be put on hold until the background check is completed

Nazulu: Why were we never told that Terra needs funding? The Zulu family could've handled that

Me: Thobekgale Pharmaceutical is one of the best And i am honoured to be funded by them, even yesterday at school i was asked how i can help other kids get such funding

Danzo gave me a weird look..

Tpee: you have already registered?

Me: Yes i did yesterday

Him: What are your majors?

I went to fetch my timetable and showed him, he went through it while i sat next to him...

Him: Oral pathology is a nightmare watch out for it

Me: but it says here im gonna start with it around june

Him: Yes Its a 6 months course but it whoops ass

Me: ill be prepared

Him: You will be doing it after Anatomy.. Anatomy is easy but it can also be tricky. All you need to know is that their test questions are always the same they never change, we will organise previous question papers for you..

Me: Ohw thank you

Him: Everything else is okay just Oral health is alot

Me: How do you know about all of this?

Him: i once studied BDS but dropped out

Me: You lie?

Him: even Pharmacology

I laughed...

Me: Are you for real?

He laughed too..

Him: Im telling you

Mom: Terra please don't drop out

Tpee: she wouldn't dare

We all laughed...

Tpee: ill be working very much close with her, i wanna mentor her

Mom: that is great

Tpee: Maybe she can inspire Thobekgale Academy to have a Dental fauculty

My mom was all excited..

Her: Yooh Nkosi yami that would be great

Maryjane: imagine my own sister being the inspiration behind a Dental fauculty

Nazulu cleared her throat...

Her: i guess this means we should leave

Tpee: my bad how are you Nazulu? How is the tumor?

Nazulu and Danzo stood up..

Nazulu smiled at Tpee...

Her: You and i need to talk

Tpee: We will just tell me when you free

Danzo looked at me....

Him: Can you walk me out?

Mom: We in the middle of something important, im sure you know your way out

Danzo smiled at my mother..

Him: Ofcause

Both him and Nazulu walked out.

35

It was now around 16:00 i was in the kitchen cooking while also thinking about Danzo and what happened today. He hasn't called me or text me for that Matter, he probably is upset about what happened earlier..

My mother walked in the kitchen..

Her: You burning

I didn't hear her..

She pushed me a little..

Her: You burning!

Me: Ohw

I shifted the pot from the stove

Her: Where has your mind gone too?

Me: Sorry mama i was just..

I didn't know what excuse to tell her..

Her: Where you thinking about that Zulu boy?

I kept quiet.. She took a chair and sat down.

Her: What is it with this boy that you even burning our food?

I kept quiet because i didn't wanna say the wrong things

Her: do you love him?

That is a difficult question. If i say Yes she might act up, if i say no she might disapprove of our relationship..

Her: Well?

I nodded..

Her: i want the best for you, getting married at such a young age.. How do i know that you will wanna continue with school..

Me: Danzo promised that he won't stand in the way of me going to school

Her: You guys have everything all figured out

She stood up..

Her: wash the pot and cook again

Me: Okay

She then left.. I wish my mom could just understand and give Danzo a chance because i really don't want to choose between them i love them both..

Later at night we dished up and then went to sit in the lounge while watching Tv. Our meal wasn't fancy just pap and fish, the fish was mixed with tomatoes..

Mom: Its nice Ndisa

Me: Thank you mom

Maryjane: it is nice indeed

Mom: so when are your classes starting?

Me: 6th of Feb

Maryjane: thats in a weeks time, are you ready?

Me: i think so

Mom: Just go there and make us proud

Me: ill try

Someone knocked at the door as we were eating..

Mom: expecting someone?

Me: no but ill get it

The person didn't even knock at the kitchen door, they knocked at the back door..

I put my dish down on the table and went to open. It was 3 guys standing at the door step they looked rather suspicious. It was those typical guys who sit by the side of the road, smoke weed and play dice those who bath once a week..

Me: Can we help you?

Guy1: No can we step in?

I moved out of the way and they got in..

Guy2: mamzo

My mom looked at them..

Guy3: We didn't mean to disturb your family dinner nyana

Mom: then what do you want?

One of them pulled out a gun

Advertisement

we all freaked out my mom screamed.

Guy1: scream again nizobhoda nonke (scream again you all gonna die)

Mom: Please don't hurt us, Ohhh Nkosi yami!

Guy2: thina nje sifuna izaka (we want money)

Mom: izaka?

Maryjane: They want money

Mom: We don't have money

One of them looked at me...

Him: akukho stress sizogcula u suster sivaye naye (there's no stress, we will take her and leave with her)

Mom: No whuuuu ngiyanicela bandla (please)

I was very scared this people look like they can hurt me very very bad..

Guy2: mgcule ntanga sivaye (take her and let's go)

One of them put me over his shoulder and carried me out while the other 2 stayed behind with my mother and Maryjane..

He put me at the backseat of those old BMWs. There was another one driving but that one looked decent..

He started driving..

Me: What do you want from me and where are you taking me?

The one sitting with me at the backseat punched me across the face..

Him: shut up!

Driver: What the fuck are you doing man do you wanna die?

Him: No just that she talks alot maan!!

I put my hand were i had been punched, i just couldn't believe that this was happening to me...

.

DANZO

I was sitting at the study trying to catch up on some work with a glass of whiskey next to me..

I was working on how i can grow the business from where Banzi left off..

He walked in the room while i was still working.. I looked at him.

Me: You look ready to go

Him: Yeah i am, my flight is gonna take off soon

Me: wish i could drive you to the airport man but..

Him: Don't sweat it

I stood up and went to him..

Me: be safe

Him: as always

We shared a hug..

Me: call me

Him: i sure will

It was hard seeing my only brother leaving but if he feels this will do him good then i won't stand in his way..

When he walked out one of my boys Majoro walked in...

Him: bra Danzo

I looked at him...

He took off his hat

Me: What did i say about coming to my house?

Him: hade bra Danzo (sorry)

I folded my arms and leaned on my desk..

Me: And?

Him: no i plan ivaye grand, simgculile use warehouse (the plan went fine we got her she's at the warehouse)

Me: Good and im sure my instructions were clear that you not supposed to touch her

Him: ya about that, ngithe ukumuthi nje kancane (i touched her a little)

Me: uthe ukumthini? (what did you do to her)

Him: ngimshaye nge upper cut nyana (i punched her)

Me: You what?

Him: bekaringa kakhulu bengifuna athule (she was talking alot so i wanted her to shut up)

Me: i understand

He smiled..

Him: i knew you would understand bra Danzo

Me: You can go back to the warehouse and make sure that everything is okay

Him: dankie bra Danzo

He put on his hat again and left. I took my phone and called the security outside...

Me: We had an intruder, i don't know how he passed you guys at the gate all i know is that i want him gunned down.. He is wearing a hat and a black jacket, white all star sneakers.. Just shoot him dead!!

36

DANZO

I love Mash with all my heart and all i wanted was just for her mother to accept our relationship and give me blessings to marry her Daughter. Ive done fooled around with alot of chicks, but now Its time i settle down and start my own family and who better to do that with, other than Mash...

Im not trying to hurt my baby girl or her family, but i had to pull up this kidnap stunt because i am really trying to make her mom see that i am good enough for her Daughter.

The only problem with me is that if i want something i will eliminate anything around me to get what i want no matter how much the cost but with Mash i can't hurt her mother....

I had just finished preparing myself for work, and i had checked with the other guys in the warehouse where they keeping Mash and Everything seems to be going good so far...

All im looking for in all of this, is to just be the hero and Save Mash so that her mother can have faith in me..

I took my phone, car keys, and laptop then made my way downstairs to eat breakfast and go to work..

I found my mother, or should i say i found Nazulu and Mandisa's mother at the kitchen. Mandisa's mother was crying...

Nazulu: here's your water

Her: Thank you

Nazulu: if you allowed for my Nephew to marry your daughter none of this would've happened, we would've protected her

I put my things on the table..

Me: Good morning

Nazulu: Morning son.. Agh i mean morning Danzo

Me: What's wrong?

Nazulu: Terra was kidnapped last night

Me: What? How?

Terra's mom: We.. We were having..

Nazulu: drink the water it will help calm you down

She drank the water..

Her: some 3 guys came in last night at our home, they demanded money but i had nothing.. Then they.. They..

I put my hand on her shoulder..

Me: Im sorry Ma

Her: usathane wani kodwa lo Nkosi yami (what kind of evil and devil is this)

She was very affected by this,she was broken i don't even think she slept last night..

Her: i just want my Daughter home.

Me: did you report the matter to the police?

Her: i did but they didn't take me serious, they said she probably ran off with her boyfriend

Me: the justice system of this country

Her: She's supposed to go to school, why is this happening now?

I held her hand..

Me: ill help you find her

She looked at me..

Me: i know a few people in high places, ill make a few calls and see were it leads

Her: Thank you, thank you soo much.

Me: Don't mention it, right now i think that you should go home and try to get some sleep

She shook her head no...

Her: We all greatly affected by this, i love Mandisa too and ill go all out to try and bring her back home safe even if it means sacrificing my life to save hers ill do it because that's how much i love her

Advertisement

i will bring your daughter back at home without a scratch and that is a promise..

She smiled through her tears..

Her: all along i thought you were a bad person, but what you just said i have no doubt that you love my daughter

Me: Its okay Ma. I think you should go home relax don't come to work until Mandisa is home safe and sound

i then looked at NaZulu...

Me: Ohw and she will pay you your full salary

Nazulu: i will?

Me: Ofcause you will

Her: ohhh ya i will

She stood up and looked at us..

Her: Thank you very much

Me: Don't mention it, ill get the driver to take you home

Nazulu: ill walk you out

They walked out, and i made myself coffee while whistling..

Nazulu came back after a while, she just stood there and smiled at me..

Her: You are.. You are smart, always have been!

I sipped on my coffee..

Me: i have no idea what you talking about..

Her: You kidnapped Terra, now you wanna make yourself a savour in her mother's eyes..

Me: Still don't know what you talking about

Her: i undermined you, but this you good

I put my mug down then took my things...

Me: i have to go to work

I walked out while still whistling..

...

[TERRA]

I was in this weird looking place with the guy that was driving the BMW last night. It was just me and him, i don't know what

happened to the others. My ankle was chained against a pole, i was restricted into reaching certain places..

I was sitting on the floor while looking at him preparing something to eat for me...

I have cried until i got tired.

Him: breakfast is ready

He came with the tray and put it a bit far from me i think he didn't wanna come close because he didn't want me to attack him,with the tray....

I looked at the tray and it was eggs, cheese, sausages, sliced tomatoes and fruit juice with a fruit salad on the side..

Me: i have never seen kidnappers making such breakfast for their hostages..

He took an apple then started eating..

Him: like i told you im not a bad person

Me: What do you want?

Him: my daughter is sick so i am holding you for Ransom

Me: How much do you want?

Him: about 500 000

I laughed....

Me: 500... My mother cannot even afford a quarter of that money

Him: They will have to find a way

This was all bullshit where will my mother find such an amount of cash..

Me: Yeah whatever

Him: You don't know of anyone who can help?

I shook my head no..

Him: There has to be someone, your dad, brother, or even boyfriend

Me: My father di..

I paused..

Him: thought of someone?

Me: Yes, my boyfriend Danzo

Him: Can he afford half a mill?

Me: i hope so

Him: then we will call him later

For my sake, i hope Danzo comes through for me..

37

The time finally came for this guy to call Danzo, all along i have been praying that Danzo answers and also that he comes through for me. After that stunt he pulled at Res, i have little faith in him with helping me...

The guy came closer to me with the phone...

Him: Don't worry he won't be able to Trace it

This guy looked. Very decent, kidnapping is clearly not his Forte

Him: cell phone number please

I gave him and he dialled it then put the phone on his ear..

Him: and what do you know, Its ringing

I stood up and looked at him.. This was it, i pray he comes through God let Danzo help me, do it for my mother who is very much worried about me right now....

He put it on loud speaker and Danzo answered on the 4th ring..

Danzo: Hello

Me: Danzo! Its me! Im kidnapped!

The guy stepped away and stood a bit far from me but i could still hear their conversation..

He took out his gun and pointed it at me..

Him: behave

His facial expression indicated that he wasn't playing anymore..

Danzo: Mash is that you? Where are you? Everyone is worried about you including your mother..

I looked at the guy and he signalled that i should keep quiet..

Him: i have her

Danzo: Who are you?

Him: That don't matter, what matters is that i have her

Danzo: What do you want?

Him: i don't know maybe 500 000

Danzo laughed...

Him: You crazy! You aint getting a cent

He shot at the wall and i screamed. The noise that the gun made really scared me..

Him: am i still crazy?

Danzo kept quiet for a while..

Danzo: When do you want the money?

Him: tomorrow

Danzo: That's too soon

Advertisement

i still need to talk to my accountant

Him: my baby girl's surgery is in two days, i need that 500 grand to pay for her hospital bills and pay for the surgery beforehand she cannot hold up for that long the hospital is ready to transfer to a much cheaper hospital!

Danzo: Calm down i will make a plan

Him: You better! I will send you details on where we gonna make an exchange.. Ohw and call the cops she's dead i will strap a bomb on her

Danzo: Let's not do anything drastic...can i talk to her?

Him: You pushing your luck

Danzo: i wanna know if she's fine

He looked at me, tell him that you fine..

Me: Danzo im.. Im fine!

Him: only for today she's fine, im not sure about tomorrow

Danzo: Can i..

He hung up.. Then looked at me..

Him: tick tok.. Tick tok.. Tick tok.. Time is running out..

I sat down and did what my mother taught me to do and that is to pray..

...

DANZO

I looked at that money in that briefcase one last time, the R200 notes at the top were real but everything at the bottom was just blank papers....

I closed the briefcase when my assistant knocked..

Her: jimmy is here to see you

Jimmy is my PI whatever i want he gets it for me..

Assistant: would you like anything to drink Jim?

Jimmy: No thank you, i won't stay for that long

Her: Okay you will just call me when you need anything

Me: i sure will

She closed the door..

Me: She probably would be rich if she got paid everytime when she said that

Jimmy: That's true

Me: i have whiskey

Him: ill pass

He sat down.. I went and poured myself some

Him: You still obsessed with whiskey

Me: Let's just say, it calms me down

Him: scotch?

Me: all the way from scotland

Him: Grants?

Me: too cheap

Him: What are we celebrating?

Me: My achievements

Him: add this achievement to your achievements

He threw an envelope on the table..

Me: is it what i think it is?

Him: he is 4 years old

I opened the envelope and it was pictures of a young boy..

Jimmy: she never miscarried

Me: She lied to me?

Him: all this years!

Me: all this years she lied to me

I threw the glass against the wall..

Me: Who is that fool with them in this picture?

He looked at it..

Him: unfortunately she is married now and this fool is raising your son as if like Its his own

We heard a knock at the door..

Me: Come in

My assistant walked in..

Her: Everything okay heard things breaking

Me: When i need you i will call you

Her: Sorry

She closed the door, i looked at jimmy..

Me: address?

He gave me a piece of paper..

Me: is that restraining order she has against me still valid?

Him: she has nothing against you anymore

I looked at the picture of my son one more time..

Me: all along i moved overseas because i had guilt that i was the one who caused her that miscarriage, i couldn't forgive myself and all along she's been playing with me

Him: What you gonna do?

I pulled my chair and sat down..

Me: You have no idea.. Where is the boy now?

Him: at his grandmother's house due to be fetched at 18:00 when she knocks off

I looked at the picture again..

Him: You gonna strike tonight?

Me: No i have something important tonight and tomorrow

He stood up..

Him: ill be intouch as always

Me: Thank you man

Him: You welcome

He walked out..

38

Back in high school i met this girl named Brandy. She was the most beautiful thing i have ever seen. She was sweet, always smiling, shy at times, and not much of a talker. Brandy and i started dating when she was in grade 9 and i was in grade 11..

Our relationship went on until we finished high school, we got engaged and moved in together. I was in varsity and she was trying to get her way into varsity she had some cash problems..

We were very much inlove, Nazulu had no problem in helping us financially as i was trying to obtain my degree..

Things took a different turn when she started cheating on me and our relationship just went down hill, abused surfaced alot just happened that we became toxic for each other..

She fell pregnant and then after a week she miscarried, at least that is what she told me..

After that i up and left i went overseas to forget about everything. Now im back and hearing that Brandy didn't miscarry and that my son is now 4 years old, she kept the whole pregnancy from me..

Before i went to Terra's house to inform her mother about the new developments with the kidnap i made my way to the Diner were Brandy works. Her shift was supposed to end at 18:00, but now she's pulling in a double shift..

I thought that maybe Brandy went to school after everything because she really was determined to further her studies i am very surprised that she is working at a dinner..

I got there and it was a bit empty, i went and got myself a table as i waited to be attended too..

One of the waitresses came to me.

Her: Good evening sir

Me: Evening

I was wearing shades..

Me: Can i please have the menu

She handed me the menu..

Her: You can call me when you ready to order

Me: ya uhm is Brandy around?

Her: Yes she is

Me: i would like her to be the one serving me tonight

Her: No problem

Me: Thank you

I looked at the menu until Brandy came to my table..

Her: Evening sir may i please take your order?

She had a pen and pad, she didn't even look at me she was much focused on that

Me: Brandy?

I took my shades off and looked at her, she looked beautiful as always even after all this years..

She was very shocked to see me..

Her: Danzo?

Shocked and scared..

Her: What.. What are you doing here?

Me: Gosh you still beautiful even after all this years

Her: How did you find me?

She was trying to act tough but deep down she was scared the pen and pad confirmed that on how she was shaking..

Me: Wasn't that hard

She looked around then looked at me..

Her: What do you want Danzo?

Me: Please sit

Her: Im working

I looked around..

Me: There's no customer that needs to be served, so please sit down

She sat down..

Me: How are you?

Her: Im fine

Me: That's good.. I would like to meet my son

She laughed..

Me: i don't remember cracking a joke

Her: What son?

I threw the pictures on table

She looked at them.

Her: What? Where you having me followed?

Me: i wanna meet my son

Her: he is not your son, he is my husband's son i am married.

You killed yours i miscarried remember?

Me: bullshit!

She stood up..

Her: You don't have a child with me Danzo!.. Now are you going to order or what?

I chuckled..

Me: i see you have grown some back bone

Her: after what you did to me, i had too

I put my shades back on..

Me: ill be getting married soon, you are invited

She laughed..

Her: Wow!

Me: What's that supposed to mean?

Her: What did you do for her to agree to marry you? Let me guess you whipped her on her back with a cable until her skin peeled off then locked her up in a dark room for 4 days until her wounds were infected? Or how about this one did you strap her on the bed and left her there for days? She couldn't go to the toilet she had to do her business there? What about this one now this is very good, did you show her off to your friends as if like she was some tramp? Having to strip for them while all of them watch her and you making comments like "show them what you made off baby" if she start slacking you burn her nipples with a cigarette?

Me: Brandy..

Her: What is it Danzo? What is it because it has to be one of those!

She had tears in her eyes, she was angry and hurt..

Me: i am now a different man, i have changed a great deal

Her: You will never change Danzo!

I stood up..

Me: Im sorry i didn't mean to upset you

Her: You never do

I walked out to my car..

I didn't have the energy to go to Mandisa's house anymore
Brandy really drained me by taking me back there, back to that life..

The following day Soldier text me on where we should do the exchange, our plan had work perfectly and i couldn't wait to be crowned the Hero..

I drove up to the warehouse and Mash was very thrilled to see me. I had the suitcase with me

She had a coat around her that had a bomb, although it was counting down and looked real but it was very fake..

Soldier was with a few guys we really had to make this look real..

Soldier: Frisk him

One of the guys came and searched me..

Him: His clean

Soldier: Where you followed?

Me: No

Soldier: Money Please

I tossed the briefcase to him and one of his guys took it and went to the table far from us and made as if like he was counting some of the money..

Him: Its all in here boss

Soldier: Let's get out of here, take our things

They did as they were told..

Him: When we safely out of sight i will deactivate the bomb, but if cops follow us then i will press this button she will die. Try to remove the bomb while Its not deactivated Its gonna go off and both of you will die

He looked at his guys..

Him: lets go boys

They all left.. Mandisa stood there all crying

Her: Please tell me you didn't call the cops?

Me: Im not that stupid

We waited for about 15min then the bomb was deactivated..

She removed it and then ran up to me and hugged me while crying..

Me: Its alright, you are safe now..

39

Danzo took me home and my family was very happy to see me. My mom couldn't stop the tears and so was i. I was very grateful to be home i mean after all that's happened i really need to be more thankful in life..

Mom: i am so relieved to see you. I couldn't sleep, i couldn't eat, i was thinking about you all the time.

Me: I was very scared mom

Her: You safe now

She hugged me..

Maryjane looked at Danzo..

Her: How did you find her?

Me: the kidnappers were holding me for Ransom, they wanted 500 000

Maryjane: 500 what?

Danzo: it was a small price to pay for Mandisa's life

Mom: You paid that much money to have my daughter home?

Danzo: i couldn't let her miss school could i now?

Maryjane: Wow i wish i had someone who loves me that much

Mom: i am so sorry for judging you

Danzo: Water under the bridge

Mom: Ndisa are you okay?

Me: Im okay mom i just wanna bath and sleep

Danzo: We should up the security in this house, put security doors, window buttlers

Mom: You have done alot already

Danzo: i want everyone to be safe

His phone rang..

Him: Sorry i have to take this

He walked out..

Mom: im glad that you home

Me: Im glad to be home

Maryjane: ill make you something to eat while you go and bath

She went to the kitchen..

Mom: did they hurt you?

Me: No, although a bomb was strapped on me Thank God

Danzo came through for me fast

Her: he truly loves you

Me: He does mother

Danzo came back...

Him: Im sorry i have to go Its the office

Mom: before you go i have something to tell say

We looked at her..

Mom: i am very sorry that i misjudged you. What you did for my daughter and for us as a whole we don't know how we could ever repay you

Danzo: i don't want to be repayed all im asking for is your blessings in marrying your daughter

She held both our hands, then United them..

Her: i hope your family has another 500 000 for Lobola because my daughter is very expensive

Me: does this mean?

Mom: Yes you have my blessings

Danzo: Thank you very Ma and i promise that i will treat her good

Mom: i know.. Ill give you two some space

She walked out of the room....

I looked at Danzo..

Me: Thank you for saving me

He pulled me closer and hugged me..

Him: Im just happy that you okay and that now i have blessings to marry you

Me: Im happy too

Danzo: How about we start with the negotiations before you go to school

Advertisement

maybe this coming Sunday?

Me: That's quick but i wanna move in that big ass house so

He laughed..

Him: ohh so you wanna marry me because you wanna move in the house

I put my hands around his neck..

Me: Ain't you gonna be late for work since the office called you?

He put his hands around my tinny waist

Him: Im the boss

He kissed me..

Him: let me take you out tonight?

Me: that would be lovely

Him: ya to get your mind off what happened

Me: You know what's interesting about the who thing?

Him: What?

Me: the guy who kidnapped me wasn't bad, he didn't treat me horrible he even made me delicious breakfast

Him: That's weird

Me: i know hey

Him: Im just happy that you back

Me: Im happy too

We kissed again..

.

[TPEE]

"by the time you read this ill know that im no more. Thank you for everything that you have done for me i am truly thankful and grateful.

You are one of the most remarkable people ive ever got to know, you left a mark in my life to always remember you even if i die some day..There's a saying that says before you die you see your life flashing right in your face and as much as this is

gonna sound crazy, but i have this bad aura that something is gonna happen to me. Know that if i die it wasn't an accident i was murdered. Knowing the Zulu's and how they are i hope that you won't be naive in what you gonna hear about my death.

Nevertheless i have a cousin by the name of Terra and she is involved with one of the Zulu Brothers Danzo to be exact. Danzo killed his brother Kenzo and then made it look like an accident. I have a bad feeling about him, he consumes great evil inside of him and Please i want you to protect my cousin for me. There's no other person i would trust to bring the Zulu's down but you

I hope this letter sees you well

Nokwanda"

I put the letter in my drawer i have read it a couple of times and each time i read it, it sounds as if like Nokwanda has written this letter after her death. I know Its crazy but there's something about it the way she explains her death not being an accident something was definitely fishy..

The door of my office opened and my wife walked in..

Her: You left home early

Me: You were sound asleep i didn't wanna wake you up..

She sat down slowly..

Her: i would've come over to kiss you but im exhausted and i don't wanna be busy bending..

Me: What did the doctor say?

Her: i didn't go today

Me: Why?

Her: i had no one to drive me

Me: That's no excuse

Her: i just didn't feel like going Tshepi

Me: Septicemia is dangerous

She smiled at me...

Me: i don't think you dying is supposed to be funny

Her: Just so sweet when you care

She stood and came to sit ontop of me..

Her: are you okay?

Me: Nokwanda wrote me a letter

Her: When?

I got it from the drawer and she started reading

Her: she wrote this after death?

Me: Weird isn't it?

Her: very, so she was murdered

Me: Looks that way

Her: Nokwanda didn't fall from the stairs while drunk, she never used to drink

Me: i need to avenge her death

Her: Tshepi..

Me: Not in that way

Her: In which way

Me: by protecting her cousin

Her: This Danzo is dangerous?

Me: if you think im evil you definitely haven't met Danzo

She laid her head on my shoulder

Her: if its like that then do it, just don't end up doing the worst

Me: im not planning too

40

I had prepared myself for the dinner. I was wearing a bootleg Jean with a green tshirt and matching pumps. I put a hair band over my braids and neatly laid them back..

I didn't put on alot of make up just a mascara and an eye liner with a lip gloss..

The dinner plans had changed i wasn't going out with Danzo anymore Tshepiso Thobekgale had called and invited me to his house for dinner, and he also wanted us to talk about my bursary and how he is gonna go about in mentoring me because this was one challenging course..

I was very grateful for all that he was doing for me and i am willing to work hard to show him that he didn't make a mistake in giving me the bursary because i was the first student to actually get a bursary while im not even registered in his instution..

I didn't tell Danzo about this, i wanted to tell him face to face than over the phone.

My sister walked in the bedroom just as i was doing final touch ups..

Her: Look at you?

I looked at her...

Me: is it too much?

Her: a bit i mean Its like you and Mr Thobekgale are going on a date and not a business dinner...

Me: i was scared that you were gonna say that

Her: but then other than all of that you look great

Me: Thank you

Her: Just know that we very proud of you

Me: Im Proud of myself, i wish dad was here

Her: Wherever he is im sure he is proud of you too

Me: Yeah we will keep on telling ourselves that

Her: How are you getting to his place?

Me: He is fetching me

Her: he is coming here?

Me: Yeap

Her: Look how much of a mess i am

Me: Don't tell me you trying to impress him?

Her: girl did you see how fine he is? Whoever married that is sure lucky

We heard a car pull up..

Her: is that him?

Me: No its Danzo.. Is mom back from church?

Her: girl stop tripping you know that church never comes out

Me: Well she will find me gone

I went to the door to open and it was indeed Danzo..

Me: Come in

He walked in..

He whistled...

Him: Dammit yazi umuhle kanjani (you look beautiful)

I blushed..

Me: Thank you

Him: Im even jealous of going out with you

I didn't say anything..

He came closer..

Him: i was thinking that maybe after dinner

He kissed me on my neck..

Him: You can spend a night at my house

He gently bit my ear..

Him: What do you say?

I pushed him back a bit..

Him: is your mom around?

Me: uhm no

He came closer again..

Him: then why ung'chomela so?

Me: Danzo i.. Unfortunately we cannot go out for dinner anymore

Him: Why?

Me: because

We heard a knock at the door..

Me: ill get that

I walked and opened the door

Advertisement

It was Mr Thobekgale himself and oh boy oh boy did he look fresh with his fresh boyz outfit?

He was wearing all pure white from hat to his sneakers..

He didn't tie his dreadlocks this time around they were loose and that hat suited him perfectly..

He looked fine i won't lie, i was starring at him for like 30seconds without even blinking..

Him: Are you ready to go?

I came back to planet earth...

Danzo: Ready to go where?

Him: Danzo Its always a pleasure to see you man

His conniving smile and those swallow dimples made my knees weak..

Danzo: go where Mash?

Me: i.. I wanted to tell you that Mr Thobekgale..

He put his hand on my arm and smiled at me..

Him: Please call me Tpee

What is he doing? Why is his hand ontop of mine arm right now? What is he trying to do? That touch sent shivers down my spine..

Our moment of starring each other was broken when his phone rang...

Him: Its a business call i have to take it.. Ill be waiting for you in the car

He lightly punched Danzo on his shoulder

Him: See you around man

Then he answered his phone while walking out..

Tpee: Duvenhage

I was brought back to reality when Danzo slapped me across the face..

He was very mad like i ain't seen him this mad before...

Him: Why would you fucken disrespect me like that?

I didn't Say anything, i didn't know what to say because first of all he had no business raising his hand on me..

Him: i specifically asked you for 3 things and one of them was to fucken respect me

He started walking around the room..

Him: do you even wanna marry me? Are you ready for marriage Mandisa?

I kept quiet..

Him: Im talking to you!!! (shouting)

That scared me..

Maryjane walked in..

Her: What's going on?

Danzo looked at her..

Danzo: Stay out of this

Maryjane: You don't raise your voice at my home and then tell me to stay out of whatever is going on here! Have some respect for my parents house!

Danzo: i said stay out of this!

Me: i think you should leave Danzo

Him: i am not going..

Maryjane: You should leave indeed! Or else im calling the cops

He looked at us and then walked out, Maryjane came to me..

Her: are you fine? I smiled at her.

Me: Yes im fine.. I have to go Tpee is probably waiting for me

Her: Enjoy I walked out and Tpee was coming through the gate..

Him: i thought you probably changed your mind you were taking too long. Me: Sorry i was just.

Him: i saw your boyfriend storming out is everything okay?

Me: Everything is fine

Him: then let's go

We walked up to his car.

41

Tpee and i drove up to his house, nothing much was said in the car i was more thinking about Danzo and what happened that i was very quiet in the car. Maybe i pushed him to that point, but whatever i did doesn't give him the right to raise his hand on me. I love Danzo with all my heart and im not down for what happened..

Tpee's house was very big and beautiful, actually scratch that it was a beautiful mansion and bigger than the Zulu mansion...

The table was set beautifully, everything was perfect..

Him: so what do you think?

Me: Its beautiful

Him: Im glad you like it

Me: if i didn't like it?

Him: That would be bad because i was supposed to be in a very important meeting but i cancelled it so that i could have this dinner with you. I want us to talk about school and how we can make it a fruitful year for you. Dental Therapy is not a course to be taken lightly especially with the Eleven modules you will be doing and Ofcause that excludes clinicals

Me: Yho sounds like a lot of work

Him: it is

He sat down and i sat down too opposite him..

Him: but first let's have dinner

Me: Okay.. Uhm is your wife around?

Him: No my wife is in hospital

Me: That's sad, im sorry.

Him: Its okay she's in the best hands

Me: if you say so

Him: my chef has already left so i will have to dine you

Me: Ohw

Him: but first ill have to cook

Me: You can cook?

Him: i try

Me: This i really have to see

Him: Then come along

We walked to the kitchen..

Him: wine?

Me: Why not

He poured me a glass of wine, and poured himself juice..

Me: You don't drink?

Him: i do but i don't like the taste of alcohol

Me: Same here

Him: Natural sweet red wine tastes good

I tasted it..

Me: Its actually good, most wines ive drank were bitter

He chuckled..

Him: then you haven't been drinking the right ones

He took out the pan..

Him: You can get me the stir fry in the freezer

I went and got him..

Me: You not gonna wear an Apron?

Him: Im not clumsy

I let him be..

Him: so are you ready to be on your own? Ready to experience that kind of life? Meeting new people doing everything that a varsity chick would do?

Me: uhm i just wanna work hard and get my degree, i am very much focused on the goal

Him: i like your drive but you have to loosen up go out meet new people and boys your age

Me: ya if only it was that simple

Him: something wrong?

I looked at him..

Me: Nothing is wrong i.. Im nervous about Sunday

Him: What's happening on Sunday?

Me: My Lobola negotiations

Him: so quick what's the rush?

Me: No rush just that Danzo and i agreed on this and we wanna do it

Him: is it you or him?

Me: both of us

Him: i very much doubt that's what you want

Me: And how do you know that?

He looked at me..

Him: You young, beautiful, smart i assume. You still full of life, you should be out there living your life than lazing around all day in the kitchen being a housewife. You should go out see the world

Advertisement

travel the world, meet new people, chase after your dreams. Then when you have done all of that you can settle down.

What he was saying some of it made sense but this is the real world, some other things you just have to skip and do What's required of you..

Him: for how long have you known Danzo?

Me: long enough

Him: long enough to marry him, have you spent more time with him? Do you know what kind of a person he is?

Me: i know him enough to realise that he cares about me

Him: How did you come to realise that?

Me: He paid 500k in exchange for my life

He chuckled..

Him: i paid millions in exchange for my wife's freedom

Me: Are we gonna talk about my boyfriend all night?

Him: Was just making a conversation

Me: Yeah maybe i don't like this conversation

Him: Its cool then

I watched him cook, i tasted his food and i had a refill of the wine every now and then. The wine relaxed me alot, and i was now starting to be very comfortable around Tpee. Nokwanda was right Tpee is not soo horrible underneath it all he is a big soft teddy bear..

We were now eating the main course but i was full from the stir fry with chicken strips that we ate earlier on...

Me: i think im full

Him: then we can take a walk around the pool outside, plus you tipsy you need some fresh air

Me: That's a good idea

I stood up and took my glass..

Me: refill please

Him: i think you've had enough

Me: Please i really like how this wine relaxes me

He poured wine for me again..

Then we walked out to his big ass pool..

Him: i don't think i can drive you home, your mom wouldn't be soo thrilled to see you in this state

Me: ya ya ya whatever

I took off my shoes, then folded my jeans..

Me: hold here

Him: What are you doing?

Me: Just hold here

He took the glass from me. I sat down and put my feet in the pool..

Me: the water is icy cold

He gave me my glass...

Me: Aren't you gonna sit next to me?

Him: Why not?

He took his sneakers and socks then folded his Jeans too and sat next to me..

Me: You are not soo bad

Him: What made you think that im bad?

Me: the first time i saw you, you were this big intimidating bear

He laughed..

Him: i didn't know that im intimidating

Me: now you know

I gulped that wine down..

Me: You are so cute

Him: Thank you

I attempted to take off his hat but stopped me..

Me: Come on

He let me take of his hat and i put it on me

Him: it looks good on you im even gonna take a pic

He took out his phone and took a pic, before we knew it we were taking crazy pictures..

Me: This one looks like we belong in a mental instution

Him: i look better than you

Me: No you don't

Him: this one looks dope im even gonna make it my WhatsApp DP

Me: go ahead

He went ahead with it..

We then looked at each other..

Me: Im having a nice time with you

Him: me too

He leaned over and we kissed..

Was a long smooth kiss..

When we were getting into the mood i felt a sharp pain arising from my heart...

Him: What's wrong?

Me: im not feeling good

I got out of the pool..

Him: Terra?

The pain was soo intense that it felt like i was gonna have a heart attack..

I couldn't breath, i couldn't do anything i just went down on my knees while vomiting blood too. As i vomitted i started feeling very dizzy too..

All i remember was Tpee rushing to me as i went down..

42

I was woken up by a unique and distinctive smell. It was one that i wasn't very much familiar with or came across. It was smelling of fresh spring flowers, it was a good smell though. I slowly opened my eyes, i had sounds more like beeping sounds as if like i was in a hospital. And to my surprise, when i had fully opened my eyes although i was dizzy but i was very much aware of my surroundings.

I saw Somandlakazi and Nazulu in the ward with me. It wasn't an ordinary hospital, i saw a Tv on the wall, i was in my own ward the bed was something else the chairs were almost as if like they were small couches and a small table in the middle..

Somandlakazi was walking around in the ward with something that was dispensing smoke, the door was closed.

Somandlakazi: she is awake

They both made their way to me. Somandlakazi put her hand on my forehead..

Her: How are you feeling?

Me: What? What happened?

Somandlakazi: you have been asleep for almost 3 days

Me: ohhh

Nazulu didn't look pleasant, she was standing there giving me a disgusted look..

Her: You should've died!

Somandlakazi: Zulu!

Nazulu: What? She cheated on my son!

Somandlakazi looked at me..

Her: do you remember what happened?

Me: Not really

Nazulu: uphenduke is'muka nandwendwe that's what happened (you became a whore)

Somandlakazi: Zulu calm down!

Nazulu: Calm down yani? She cheated on my son with our arch enemy Tshepiso!

Me: i didn't cheat on Da..

Somandlakazi: Terra remember the stone i made you swallow?

I nodded..

Her: that stone is supposed to lock your love for Danzo

Me: i don't understand

Her: You are not supposed to love any other man, have any affection or sexual and physical contact with other men other than Danzo

Me: What?

Somandlakazi: you lucky to be still alive

Me: so Danzo and i we cannot be with other people?

Nazulu sent out an evil laugh...

Nazulu: you and Danzo?

I looked at her..

Her: i didn't make my son swallow that stone

Me: but you said you will give it to him?

Her: Im not stupid i know what i said, but i didn't give it to him!

Me: so..

Somandlakazi: Danzo's love for you is real Its not counterfeited with

Me: so why give me the stone?

Nazulu: because i know how much of a whore and gold digger you are! You have just proven yourself. I was securing the Zulu empire because i knew that if you got your claws into my riches you would've ran off and left my son! I knew you was gonna

break his heart! I knew you were not to be trusted you Pathetic gold digging whore!

She literally spat at me..

She came closer to my face with her hands balancing on the bed, the evilness that i saw reflecting in this woman's eyes was very gruesome..

Her: The Zulus own you. I own you. Your life, your soul, your everything. If you cheat on my son you gonna die and i hope this time around the won't be anyone to save you. You gonna vomit blood, your intenstines, your vital internal organs. The only way you gonna leave my son is with a coffin just like your cousin. See when it comes to my sons ill do anything to protect them! I own you, i own your poor classless family that is easily taken by money! There is no way out from this!

Me: You are evil, you gonna burn in hell!!!

She laughed..

Him: evil i breath

and hell is me!

I felt something deep inside me taking over i don't know if it was Anger or courage..

Her: You are foolish just like your Cousin! Her grandmother Sold her to us, and your mother Sold you to us with just with

500 000. You are useless just like Nokwanda! Your family is more useless with your mother who spends her whole life scrubbing and shining the tiles in my house, cleaning after us at the toilet! Pathetic useless family!

I laughed too, and she gave me a weird look..

Me: You can torture me all you want, you can abuse my mother Its okay,you might have toyed with my cousin too Its okay Nazulu, but the so called son that you looking you talking about doesn't love you, he doesn't want anything to do with you! He hates you with every fiber of his being, and that is the reason why your other son moved back to the US because he cannot stand you! He..

She slapped me.. And i still laughed..

Me: Please by all means abuse me if it will make you feel better,but Danzo will love me more than he loves you, Matter of fact he doesn't love you at all!!

She tried to attack me but Somandlakazi held her back..

She put her hand on her forehead..

Me: What's wrong are we having a migrane? You dying Nazulu that brain tumor is slowly but surely killing you! You gonna die alone without your sons even sitting next to your bed, they won't even cry for you but instead they will be happy they will

celebrate your death and ill make sure that i will plan that celebration.

Nazulu was furious she was ready to kill me right there..

Somandlakazi pushed her out,then closed the door..

She then looked at me..

Me: There has to be a way, please tell me there is a way

She shook her head no

Her: There's no other way, either Danzo or death

Me: Somandlakazi

Her: Make sure that you don't agree to the doctors removing that stone from you, because you will die!

Me: There has to be a way

Her: im sorry but your life is tied to Danzo, without him you dead. No one can help you from this powerful black magic Terra, not even the mighty Tshepiso Thobekgale

She then opened the door and Walked out..

43

I was hurt and crushed. I am binded to Danzo forever, i can't leave him and there's nothing i can do about it...

The Doctor walked in as i was laying on the bed thinking.

Dr: Good afternoon

I looked at him..

Him: How are you feeling?

I shrugged my shoulders..

Him: We made a shocking discovery

Me: What is that?

Him: The is a stone in your heart, we believe that it altered with your blood circulation in that area hence that's why you had that mini heart attack..

Me: Ohw

Him: The question is how did it get dislodged there?

Me: i really don't know

Him: We will have to do surgery and remove it

Me: No

Him: What do you mean no?

Me: You cannot remove the stone

Him: i don't think that you understand the situation

Me: Doctor you not removing the stone from my heart

Him: Why are you refusing?

Me: Because if you remove it.. I.. I will die

Him: is there something that you not telling me?

Me: You can't remove the stone that's what im telling you

My mom and Danzo walked in..

My mom Came straight to me and hugged me..

Her: Ndisa what happened? I was soo worried about you

Danzo: i hope you don't mind Doc if we stay for a couple of minutes

Doc: ill only allow you to stay for about 15min my patient needs rest

Danzo: i promise after 15min we will be gone

The doctor walked away..

Mom: What happened?

Me: i.. I think it was food poisoning

Mom: food pois... That sounds serious

Me: it is but im fine Ma

Mom: When are you getting discharged?

Me: Im not sure

Mom: as long as you fine then im happy

She looked around..

Her: Its more like you in a hotel than a hospital

Me: Yes it does

Danzo: Ma can you please give us a few minutes?

Mom: Ofcause

She walked out...

Danzo came and sat beside me..

Him: How are you feeling?

Me: im okay just a bit dizzy

Him: shouldn't have let you leave with that bastard that night

Me: im sure Its not his fault

Him: Tpee is evil Mash very evil

I kept quiet..

Him: How is the food here?

Me: Not to bad, the food is actually nice

Him: it has to be because we paying alot of money

Me: You paying?

Him: Yes i am

Me: Looks expensive

Him: it is

Me: You shouldn't have

Advertisement

i would've went to a public hospital

Him: i wanted you to get the best

I held his hand..

Me: Thank you, you doing alot for me

He kissed my hand...

Him: You are soon to be my wife nothing is too much when it comes to you

I looked at him..

Me: i love you

Him: i love you too

He stood up and kissed me.

Him: let me not get in trouble with the doctor my 15min of visitation is over i suppose

Me: That's bad i wanted you to stay longer

Him: ill come back tonight

Me: Okay

He kissed me again and went..

My afternoon was quite boring but the Tv was definitely keeping me entertained until the Nurse walked in with a basket of fruits and juice with Yorghut too..

She was also holding a teddy bear.

Her: Someone is loved

Me: Danzo Is seriously doing alot for me

Her: he loves you

She put everything in the shelf..

Me: And he was here earlier

Nurse: Really? Because he hand delivered this

Me: Why didn't he come up

Nurse: Im not sure but he said he didn't wanna disturb you

Me: well can i call him to Thank him

Nurse: Yes you can

She handed me the phone and i called Danzo..

Him: Hello

Me: Hey honey

Him: is everything okay?

Me: Yes, i just wanted to Thank you for the basket you sent to me

Him: What basket?

Me: the one you hand delivered

Him: i didn't deliver anything

That was very odd, i looked at the Nurse..

Me: Can you describe the person who delivered the basket?

Her: he was wearing a suit, looked very classy and he has dreadlocks

Shit!

44

I got discharged after 3 days, the day i was discharged was the day that i was supposed to be at school. I was okay but i still had dizzy spells every now and then which was horrible, but for all its worth im thankful that im still alive. It was scary what happened, what was more scary to me was when i vomitted blood now that was very freaky i thought i was going to die but here i am..

Danzo and his family made it clear that i cannot go to school without the Lobola situation being finalised Danzo was very strict on that of which im thinking that it was because of Tpee..

He wasn't very thrilled when he learned that Tpee sent me a basket of fruits when i was still at the hospital..

The negotiations were gonna be in 2 days time, my mother finally did the right thing and had us go to my Grandmother's house to inform her about the Negotiations so she can inform the uncles. My mother's side of the family is supposed to handle everything because we don't really know much about my father's family and they far from us, so my mother's family seemed like the best candidates...

It was an afternoon when we set off to my Grandmother's house, it was gonna be my first time meeting her, together with Maryjane. My mom still didn't tell us why she doesn't get along

with our grandmother when we ask she will just say "the past is the past"

My mother was really nervous though..

I looked at my her...

Me: Are you ready?

She nodded..

The yard was very clean, her house didn't look like she was struggling outside it really looked good with big windows too..

It was very quiet as if like no one was living here..

My mother started Knocking..

And we waited to be called inside...

An old woman opened the door, she was eating peanuts..

She looked like she was in her early 70s. When her eyes and my mother's eyes locked they both stood there all frozen but my mother looked more scared, she was shaking..

Gran: Zan... Zandile?

My mom kept quiet, this was very hard for her, hard for the both of them..

Gran: Zandile wuwe ngane yami? (zandile is it you my child)

Mom: Its me Ma

Her: Let me go get the key and open...

She fetched the keys and opened the security door for us..

We all went inside, she hugged my mother with tears falling..

Gran: the anger you had towards me, i never thought that..

We all sat down..

Mom: This is.. This are my daughters. Maryjane and Mandisa

She opened her arms for us to go and hug her, we stood up and went to hug her..

Mom: im so happy to meet the both of you, i am your grandmother

Me: Nice to meet you too

Maryjane: Nice to meet you Gran

We went and sat down..

Her house was beautiful on the inside too

Advertisement

expensive furniture she's too old to be working so where did she get all this money to make her house look great. It was a 6 room house, looked more beautiful than our 4 bedroom house..

Gran: Can i offer you something to drink?

Mom: No, we not staying for long

She looked at us again..

Her: Where is Dumisani? How is he?

Dumisani is my father..

Mom: akasekho (he is not more)

Gran: That's sad what happened? Ubhubhe nini? (when did he die)

Mom: Why ask Ma? Its not like you care, you never loved him. Never accepted him..

Gran: Zandile Its not like that, ukuthi nje... (Its just that)

Mom: he wasn't rich that's why you didn't wanna accept him,that's why you disowned me!

Gran: Zandile

Mom: Your dream for me was to marry a rich man, a Doctor, same as how my sister did and where is she now? Same as No..

Gran: Zandile i hope you didn't come here to talk about the past!

The was a moment of silence for a while..

Mom: That's true, im not here for the past..

Gran: and you also not here for a friendly visit either

Mom: im here because my youngest Daughter Mandisa is dating some guy and he wants to pay Lobola for her in two day's time and i was hoping that you can talk to Abobabo'mncane (the uncles) to handle everything for us
My grandmother looked at me...

Her: she looks young to be getting married, she should be focusing on going to school

Mom: Nokwanda was almost the same age too when you married her off

My gran didn't say anything..

Gran: Who is she marrying?

Mom: Don't worry he comes from a rich family

Gran: Zandile i didn't ask that

I decided to jump in before they start fighting again..

Me: Im marrying Danzo Zulu umtaka Nazulu (Nazulu's child)

Gran: As in like Nazulu, Nazulu?

Me: yes Gran

Gran: Noo!

Maryjane: Gran..

Gran: Zandile don't let this child marry in that Family..

Mom: Why do you care? Plus aren't you going to the same church as Nazulu?

Gran: Yes we do, and i care because uNokwanda wami left with them aphila (alive) and she came back in a coffin

This was very emotional for her..

Her: even today i cannot forgive myself because i feel like i am the one who led her to her death. She came here alot of times crying to me that she's being abused but i thought she was just being silly i kept on sending her back. They kept on giving me money every month and then they killed her, bambulala umntwana wami (they killed my child)

She was now crying terribly..

Mom: Sorry that you feel that way but uDanzo is nothing like Banzi

Gran: bayafana bonke (they are all evil)

Mom: if you could know what Danzo did for Mandisa you would know that he is a good person

My grandmother shook her head no..

Me: Gra..

She stood up..

Her: unfortunately i will not lead another grand daughter of mine to be killed by that Family..

Mom: You know this would've been a way for you to mend all your wrongs that you have done to me

Gran: if you asking for us to make peace like this, then id rather have things be tense between us than to have your daughter's blood on my hands..

My grandmother wasn't giving in at all..

We stood up and approached the door..

Mom: Mandisa loves this boy and this boy loves her, there will be Lobola negotiations with or without this family

Gran: i wish you the best of luck

We left her house and went to catch a taxi. I understand how my grandmother is feeling, after seeing Nazulu's evilness that day at the hospital every parent would be scared for their child. I love Danzo im going into that marriage because i love him, and most of all i am going in this marriage to get revenge for my cousin and i am going to use Danzo to break his own mother!

If it happens that i die along the way, ill make sure that i take Nazulu down to the grave with me.

45

The day of the Lobola negotiations finally arrived, people were more surprised at the fact that it was done during the week because most negotiations are carried out on a Saturday or Sunday. We really couldn't wait for Saturday because i have to go to school i have missed alot and i cannot afford to be left behind, at least not in this course that is said to be very challenging. I am very sure that Tpee won't be happy about me missing school and what excuse am i gonna give him? "i was waiting for my Lobola negotiations" this was very messed up..

My mother went ahead to ask her 2 uncles to represent me and promised them R5000 each, when money is involved no one can say no. All this was done without my Grandmother's blessings, but i was very happy to meet some of my mother's relatives my Aunty came with her Daughter Thozie who was my cousin to help us..

I was in the bedroom with Thozie she was helping me to get dressed. I was wearing a Zulu traditional attire. It was a red skirt that had beads, a white vest, a red big necklace that was made of beads too it was a variety of beads but Red dominated. I was wearing a red hat too, with earring and my white Tommy sneakers..

When Thozie's nothing walked into the bedroom and saw me she started Ululating..

Her: our family is blessed maan! First it was Nokwanda marrying into the Zulu family, now Its you my baby hai Thozie nawe mele uthole wakwaZulu (you have to find yourself a man from the Zulu family too)

Thozie looked at me..

Thozie: basekhona dade? (are they still available my sister)

Me: unfortunately lo wuye wokugcina (unfortunately Danzo is the last one)

My mom walked in with Maryjane...

Maryjane: Wow look at you, you look beautiful

Mom: umka Danzo Nkosi yami (Danzo's wife)

Me: Mom don't start making me blush

They all laughed..

Mom: Danisile how far are you with cooking? Phela this people are on their way

My Aunt looked at her..

Aunt: yile beef stew esele (Its the beef stew that's left)

Maryjane: Salads?

Aunt: What Salads nawe Maryjane we doing pap

Advertisement

beef stew, and cabbage

Thozie: ama zulu wangempela lawa nje abazwani ne 7 colours
(this are real Zulu men they don't do 7 colours)

Aunt: uNazulu nje wuye ohluphaya (Nazulu is the problematic one)

Mom: ngani? (with what)

Aunty: yerr with Nokwanda's Lobola negotiations she wanted Italian salads you know moss those high class salads

Thozie: angazula Nkosi yami ngizulela i blue cheese (i went all over looking for blue cheess)

Mom: do we have lezo zinto zakhe? (do we have her things)

Thozie: i started with them when mom and i went to get groceries

Maryjane: ill prepare her a nice healthy salad

Me: No

They looked at me..

Me: She won't be eating

Thozie: yini indaba manje? (what's wrong now)

Me: She's on strict medication so there's specific foods that she has to eat

Aunty: Can't we prepare lezo specific foods zakhona kodwa Mandisa?phela umamazala wakho lo(can't we prepare that specific food this is your mother in law)

Me: only her Dietician handles that so nje let's not attempt anything because i don't want Nazulu dying

Aunty: manje she's gonna watch others eat?

Me: Its best that way

Aunty: Kodwa uZulu naye she's always kuma Negotiations why vele do they allow a woman to run everything?

Me: She's the head of the family after the grandmother

Thozie: Kodwa akamuhle uNazulu Nkosi yami(Nazulu is beautiful)

Aunty: Her clothes yeses!!

Thozie: Im jealous of you mzala

Me: You will find yours too one Day

My mom hit my Aunt on the shoulder..

Mom: Inyama Danisile Please time is running

Aunty: Maryjane lets go

They went, as they went out my mom's uncle walked in..

He took off his hat..

Mom: Yini manje malume angisho ngithengile ama beer(what's wrong now uncle because i have bought some beer)

Uncle: Somile mshana futhi labantu bakho bayalibazisa (we are thirsty and your people are taking time)

Mom: Malum'Dan kodwa sikhulumile ukuthi uzophuza after senicedile (we have agreed that you gonna drink when everything is done)

Uncle: but..

Mom: but nothing lets go

My mother pushed him and they went out. I see everyone is getting busy and making sure that the Zulus are given the best treatment, i am not crazy im not gonna be stumbling and falling for them especially not Nazulu that's why i even lied just so she doesn't eat...

My phone rang..

Me: i have to take this Its my husband

I went to the door and Thozie stopped me..

Her: What are you doing? The Zulus can be here anytime they not supposed to see you

Me: i have to take this!

She locked..

Her: answer it here in this bedroom

I clicked my tongue and answered..

Me: Honey

Her: What the hell took you soo long to answer your phone?

Me: And then?

Him: Sorry im just a bit nervous about everything

Me: everything is gonna go well don't stress

Him: Are they there?

Me: Not yet

Him: They left at 07:00 they supposed to be there by now

Me: love im sure they on their way

Him: i just want everyone to be perfect

Me: it is perfect my love

Him: Are you dressed like a Zulu bride?

Me: Yes i am

Him: wish i can see you

Me: ill send you a pic

Him: No need ill come when everything is done, and thank you for the money you sent so we can buy groceries and make this day perfect

Him: Anything for you

I then heard noise from outside..

Me: Honey i have to go they are here

Him: Its about time

Me: i love you bye

Him: i love you too

I hunged and my nosey cousin was peeking through the window..

Me: Thozie!

Her: They won't see me

Me: how many are they?

Her: 5 including Nazulu

Me: soo many?

Her: The cars mzala

Me: Im sure the whole neighbourhood is out and watching this

Her: obviously

My mother, my Aunt, and my sister came to join us as the negotiations were carried out. It was sooo silent we couldn't hear anything...

After 15 minutes i was fetched from the bedroom my mother and my Aunt told me to look down at all times..

My mom attached a necklace to the hat that i was wearing which extended to my face it acted as a fascinator so they won't clearly see my face..

I went to the lounge with my mother..

Uncle: wuye lo enimfunayo? (is this the one you want)

Nazulu: Yebo baba wuye umakoti wethu (Yes this is our bride)

Uncle: Mandisa uyabazi labantu? (Mandisa do you know this people)

There was a moment of silence for a while..

Me: Yebo mkhulu ngiyabazi (Yes uncle i know them)

Nazulu started Ululating..

My mom passed me a calabash that had African beer inside of it and told me to give each and every member of the Zulu family, if they all drink from it that means they accept me..

I took it and started with the first uncle. I knelt down and handed it to him while looking down, he took it and drank then after he gave it to me..

I took it to the next uncle and so forth until i ended up with Nazulu..

When i was done i went back to the bedroom....

When everything was done and they had given my family money, Thozie and i were called to go and serve the Zulu family..

My mother and my Aunt couldn't stop Ululating, my mother's uncles started singing traditional songs and dancing with the Zulu family laughing and cherring them up it was just a beautiful moment..

Everything was perfect. Although Nazulu didn't eat but she got through that, even her heart didn't allow her to be angry at such a beautiful day and occasion..

When everyone was done eating, and neighbours had come to witness everything my mother and my Aunt together with our neighbour who is old sat me down in one of the bedrooms to tell me how i should behave and carry myself as a wife.

They told me the basics:

- always respect your husband, never raise your voice at him, never raise your hand at him give him the same respect that you gave your Father.
- respect your mother in law too at all times.
- always cook for your husband unless he puts his foot down and say we going to eat out
- never question him about his whereabouts
- always satisfy his sexual needs
- never leave him even if he could have an affair, most men like to test their wings but his heart will forever be with you, he will always come home to you.
- give him alot of kids

-when you obtain your degree, don't throw your weight around, forever respect him and know that he will always be the head of the family.

It was a lot of instructions, most of them were Ancient they don't know that things are done differently now..

Danzo came to fetch me after a few hours, i had packed all my things i just couldn't believe that i was leaving home probably for good. I had changed the traditional attire, i was now wearing a Jean, my Tommy sneakers and my vest. I had a mini blanket over my shoulders and a doek covering my braids. I didn't allow myself to be one of those ancient and traditional brides, i still had my manicure, i still had my long artificial eyelashes and a bit of make-up.

My sister couldn't accept the fact that i was leaving home for good, although she was happy for me but she was torn because we gonna be living far from each other now..

Her: Im gonna miss you alot

Me: Im gonna miss you too

Her: i can't believe that this is finally happening

Me: ill call you everyday

Her: everyday?

Me: Okay maybe not everyday

She wiped her tears..

Her: You are blessed, you are truly blessed

Me: i know

Danzo Came through..

Him: Sorry to disturb but we have to go

He took my luggage to the car while i hugged and said goodbye to my family. It was an emotional moment, i didn't wanna leave them hell dare i grew up in this house all my life..

I was still in tears when the car took off

Advertisement

i turned and looked at them as they waved goodbye watching the car taking off....

Danzo held my hand..

Him: Don't cry, you now making feel bad

I chuckled..

Me: Im sorry, just that im gonna miss them

He kissed my hand...

Him: You can always visit them and they can always visit you

Me: id like that

Him: know a perfect life awaits you, im gonna give you anything that you want

Me: Anything?

Him: Anything baby

As much as this is a curse because of the stone that Somandlakazi and Nazulu put in my heart, but Danzo's love for me and him treating me like a Queen definitely is a blessing..

We arrived at the Zulu mansion, Nazulu was already waiting for us at the kitchen. Danzo instructed one of the helpers to take my luggage from the car to the bedroom..

Nazulu: we have to discuss a few things

We all sat down...

Nazulu: i know that Danzo bought a house for you and everything, but i was hoping that you guys can stay here until you married then you can move out

Danzo: We talked about this, i need my space

Nazulu: i know but im mostly alone in this big house, Noxolo is hardly here and Banzi left so i really don't wanna be alone especially in my sick state

Danzo looked at me..

Me: its fine

Nazulu: Thank you

Me: i would like to know when am i gonna go to school? Ive missed alot of classes

Danzo: you can start tomorrow

Me: then shouldn't i be at Res?

Danzo: You won't be staying at Res, you will travel everyday

Nazulu: plus Wilfred is back he can drive you everyday

Danzo looked at NaZulu..

Him: Wilfred is back?

Nazulu: he came back yesterday he will be staying in the cottage outside

Danzo: The person you teamed up with to kill my father then abuse my siblings is back and you don't think that..

Nazulu: Danzo he has really changed

Danzo: if Wilfred is back then why should we continue staying here?

Nazulu: he.. he is down and out, he needs help

Danzo stood up..

Nazulu: Where are you going now?

He ignored her and walked upstairs..

Nazulu looked at me..

Her: Nokwanda is gone, i hope that you and i will get along for the sake of peace

Me: Nokwanda is gone?

Her: Her soul was set free

Me: That's good

Her: it is. I hope you will keep your end of the deal, and that is making my son happy

Me: i will

Her: now if you would excuse me, i have to meet Somandlakazi

Me: say hi

She stood up and went, i also walked upstairs to Danzo..

The bedroom door was open and he was on the phone. He was shirtless, looked as if like he was preparing to go somewhere..

He had his back against me so i had time to eavesdrop..

Danzo: What do you mean im gonna stand you up?... Have i ever stood you up?..

He chuckled..

Him: im not married yet even if i was that wouldn't stop us from..

He turned around and saw me..

Him: i have to go, ill see you now now

He hung up..

Me: going somewhere?

Him: drinks with friends

I looked at his topless upper body and he didn't have the tattoo anymore..

Me: What happened to the tattoo?

Him: i had it removed when you were fucking around with Tpee

He put his tshirt on and his leather Jacket. He then took his phone and car keys then made his way to me..

He put his hand on my cheeks and squeezed them tight.

Him: if i ever find out that you fucking with Tpee or any other guy for that Matter know what im gonna do to you?

I couldn't do nothing with his hand on my cheeks..

He laughed..

Him: i will Bury you alive, Your family will never know what happened to you..

He let me go..

Him: i have been patient with you for far too long but now you are my wife and i am not going to tolerate nonsense!

As he said that i looked at him right in the eye and he wasn't my Danzo anymore. I saw this cold heartless monster who meant every word he said..

He kissed me then he left..

47

I laid on the bed by myself that night. I shed a few tears, i am not soo naive as to not know that Danzo is cheating on me. Kenzo has cheated on me a few times before but never has he ever let me sleep all by myself when i was at his house.

Danzo and i we supposed to be making love, giving ourselves to each other but here i am on my own just right after we got married traditionally. Is it always gonna be like this? Is this the start of me spending endless nights alone?

I got out of bed and put on my sleepers then made my way to the door. When i opened the door i heard Danzo talking in the corridor, he was talking to Noxolo.

Noxolo: for how long are we gonna keep on sneaking around? sleeping in hotels just because we don't want anyone finding out about us?

Him: i told you babe that the Zulus won't approve of our relationship they will find it somehow although we not siblings by blood but my mother adopted you and you were always considered our sister

Noxolo: though i still don't know how we managed to keep our relationship a secret for all this years

Him: We always played it safe

Her: So how is the plan of taking the Zulu empire going?

Danzo: Its getting there, we almost there

Her: Then what's gonna happen with your Trophy wife?

Him: i don't know

Her: What do you mean you don't know?

Him: means i don't know

Her: Don't tell me that you falling for her

Him: Noxolo..

Her: No Danzo Its bad enough that she's your wife and you sleeping with her, now you wanna tell me that you inlove her?

Danzo: Maybe we should talk tomorrow when you all calm

I closed the door and ran back to the bed. I couldn't believe what i heard. I know that Danzo and Noxolo are not blood related but this is shit, Its unacceptable. If Danzo's true love is Noxolo then where do i fit in? What's my purpose in everything?

I heard the door opening and closing. I closed my eyes, this is not the Danzo that i know...

After a while he got in bed and slept beside me, he put his hands around me. His hands were now cold, i was feeling different from how i usually feel when im in his arms.....

After a few hours of me silently crying myself to sleep i had a dream. In my dream i was wearing a pure white dress, and i was in a pure white room. I saw someone standing there, but they had their back against me..

I walked closer to the person.

Me: Hello

My voice had echoes..

Me: Hello

The person turned around and it was Nokwanda..

Me: Kwanda?

Her: Cousin

I went up to her and hugged her..

Me: Nazulu told me that your spirit was set free

Her: Yes it was, i don't belong in the world of the living

Me: Don't say that because i need you.. There's alot happening and Danzo is a monster i should've listened to you

Her: Shhhhh Its okay

Me: Im scared Kwanda i don't know what to do

Her: Take heart

We started walking around..

Her: fate has plans for you

Me: What plans?

Her: You gonna meet the love of your life soon, he is well connected and he is gonna help you with all of this

Me: love of my life? Nokwanda i cannot be with anyone else other than Danzo Somandlakazi said..

Her: i know what Somandlakazi said, but she didn't tell you the whole truth. The spell can be broken by true love remember 1Corinthians 13, love is very powerful. Your true love will help you break the spell

Me: Nokwanda i kissed Tpee and

Her: Tpee is not your true love that's why all of that happened

Me: Then who is my true love?

Her: You need to be strong Terra

Advertisement

Danzo will never let you go that easily. Danzo has a heart of the devil, he is the devil himself

Me: i realised that

Her: ill always be watching over you

Me: Who is my true love?

Her: His name is.....

I saw her lips moving, but i couldn't hear what she was saying anymore it was more as if like she was disappearing into thin air..

Me: Kwanda who is he? Who is my true love?

My alarm clock went off and i woke up.. I looked around and it was in the morning. I was sweating and breathing heavily..

I got out of bed and went to run myself a bath, Danzo wasn't around Lord knows were he was..

As i was sitting there waiting for the water to fill up, i took my phone and went straight to Google to search the scripture that Nokwanda told me about last night in the dream. I read it and indeed love is more powerful than i thought...

Everything was misty i don't know who my true love is, where he is coming from and everything..

When i was done bathing, i went downstairs and Nazulu was with some guy in the kitchen..

Nazulu: Here she comes

I walked over to them..

Me: Good morning

Nazulu: This is Wilfred, and Wilfred this is Danzo's wife Terra

He gave me a handshake..

Him: Nice meeting you

Me: Same here

Him: Are you ready to go?

Me: Yes i am

My phone started beeping and i took it out while walking to the car..

It was an SmS notifying me that R2000 has been transfered into my account. It was accompanied by another Sms from Danzo which read:

"that's cash for lunch. Enjoy your first day at school. I love you Mrs Zulu"

Wilfred and i drove in silence, he told me to call him when im done with my classes and he will fetch me. He left me at the gate and i Walked in.. I was very lost and my first class was "Oral biology" which i was to attend it at the Dental building lecture hall number 422A..

I asked around until i found it, and my classmates were standing outside the lecture hall was locked. The whole class

was composed of 30 students wasn't a big class. People had their manuals out they were reading and i had nothing...

One girl came to me...

Her: hi

Me: Hello

Her: My name is Landu

Me: Terra

One student shouted..

Him: Landu as the class rep go fetch the keys we wanna go in

Landu: Mr Shaw said his coming stop being otherwise

Everyone laughed..

Landu: Don't mind him he likes being extra

Me: i can see

Her: first day?

Me: Yes

Her: You've missed alot

Me: seems that way

I saw the lecturer making his way to us, Landu leaned over and whispered in my ear..

Her: that is Mr Carl Shaw he is our Oral biology lecturer.. Look at how hot he is girl

Mr Shaw was hot no lie..

He opened the door and we all went in. I sat next to Landu..

He was white, wearing a clinical coat, formal pants and DH sneakers..

He looked at us..

Him: Good morning

We greeted him back...

He walked around, his cologne filled the room..

Him: Are you guys ready?

Landu: We not ready but we don't have a choice

He laughed..

Him: You right about that you don't have a choice... Bags at the front please

We went and did as we were told..

Him: 10 questions, 10 marks the test will contribute to your year mark

Fuck a test!!

He looked at me..

Him: Are you new?

I nodded..

Him: didn't you know that classes begun last week? What happened did you loose your time table?

The class laughed, that wasn't cool at all him embarrassing me like that...

Him: but at least you'll get one mark for writing your name on the answer sheet

The class laughed again..

He gave us the question papers and answer sheets...

It was only one question that carried 10 marks..

The question was "Briefly discuss the primary dentintion. In your discussion cover the following:

-Tooth buds

-age at which each tooth erupts

-how many teeth are there in a primary dentintion "

I looked around Mr Shaw was sitting at the front playing with his iPhone, and everyone else was writing i was the only one whose answer sheet was clean..

48

I didn't write the test, i didn't even write my name or submit the answer sheet. I waited for at least one person to finish then submit, when they left i stood up too and left with Mr Shaw starring at me. I mean what was i supposed to do? Write something that i didn't know, it was insane..

We prepared for our next class which was Dental public health Landu and i have formed some sort of friendship..

We got to the lecture hall and waited for the class to begin..

Me: i hope there's no surprise test

Her: No there isn't

Me: did you see how Mr Shaw shaded me infront of everyone?

Landu: That was crazy but he is cute with his stinking attitude

Me: don't be fooled by his cuteness i feel like he is out to deliberately make us fail

Landu: Hau Terra!

Me: Im telling you.. Anyway can you accompany me to get a manual for Dental public health?

Her: We haven't got any. We attend Dental Public health on thursdays only and Today will be the first time that the lecturer is gonna show up for a lesson

Me: At least

The class got full after a while, and the lecturer showed up. Was an old beautiful looking Indian woman..

Her: Good morning

We greeted back...

Her: i am Mrs Buchaan and i will be taking you through Dental public health. Today we can just discuss what Dental public health is all about then during lunch time you can come to my office to get manuals

As she was speaking someone knocked at the door..

Her: Come in

A certain guy walked in and talked to her, she then looked at us..

Her: do we have Ms Terra Mhlongo here?

She couldn't even pronounce my surname right..

Her: Miss Terra?

I slowly raised my hand up...

Her: You are wanted in the Dean's office.

My heart skipped a bit. Am in trouble? How can i be in trouble if this is my first time in class? Is it me missing classes or something?

I stood up and the guy made his way to me..

Him: ill take you

We walked out.. My hands started getting sweaty, my breathing was seizing and my heart had a rhythm of Its own..

We got to the office and he left me there and i made my way to the assistant..

Me: Goo.. Good mor.. Morning

She looked at me..

Her: Morning how can i help you?

Me: i.. I was called to the Dean's office

Her: Miss Terra Mhlongo?

I nodded

Her: You can go in

I walked up to the door and knocked then someone told me to come in..

I opened and walked in, Tpee was there sitting right opposite the Dean..

Dean: Miss Mhlongo?

Me: Yes Sir

Please sit down..

I sat down..

Dean: ill give you some privacy

He stood up and walked out..

Tpee looked at me..

Him: What's happening?

I looked at him..

Him: You missed the whole of last week?

Me: i.. You know i was sick

Him: You could've faxed a letter from your doctor to our offices

Me: Im sorry

He kept quiet for a couple of minutes..

Him: How are you feeling by the way?

Me: Im fine now

Him: What happened? You scared me

Me: food poisoning

Him: How come i didn't get sick?

I kept quiet..

Him: Heard Danzo paid Lobola for you, Congratulations

Me: How did you know?

Him: News travel fast

Me: Okay

He put his hand ontop of mine, i shitted my hand..

Him: is it the kiss that made you to ignore my calls and everything?

Me: Tpee i don't wanna complicate things

Him: i understand can we at least be friends without benefits?

I nodded..

Him: so friend how is your first day going?

Me: You don't wanna know

Him: i wouldn't have asked

Me: My Oral biology lecturer is giving me shit

Him: How?

Me: Since i missed classes last week, today they wrote a test and i didn't know nothing so i skipped

Him: is he gonna make you write?

Me: that guy is arrogant

Advertisement

i doubt he will allow me

Him: We cannot have that now can we? Lets go and see him

Me: Its fine Tpee

Him: The test means alot to you so lets go

We stood up and went to the Oral biology&Pathology department..

We found Mr Shaw at the lab eating an Apple and looking through a microscope..

Tpee knocked, he raised his head and looked at us..

Him: Tpee she is not gonna write

Tpee: Can you at least hear me out?

So they know each other..

Him: go to my office im coming..

We walked up to his office which was at the corner..

It was very tidy and neat. He had alot of pictures on his notice board it was some beautiful girl and another young beautiful

white girl. I looked closer and he also had pictures of the little white girl at the hospital she was bald and my first thoughts was that she has cancer. The other girl was a bit of my age group, there was even pictures of them kissing clearly showing that it's his girlfriend or fiancée or even wife..

Tpee: Sit down he won't be happy with you checking those pictures out

Me: Then why does he have them on the notice board?

Him: Just sit down you already in enough trouble as it is

I went and sat down next to him, then Mr Shaw walked in. He took off his coat then went to sit down on his chair..

Him: Let's hear it

Tpee looked at me..

Me: well i.. I would like a chance for me to write the test

Him: Why?

Me: i missed classes last week because i was sick, i was at the hospital

He stretched out his hand to me...

Him: Letter from the hospital proving your statement

Me: i don't have it

Him: so why should i trust your word?

I looked at Tpee..

Tpee: let her write Dawg

Shaw: Tpee tell me something, do you see me walking into your office and telling you how to do your job?

Tpee: No

Mr Shaw looked at me..

Him: she didn't even try to write anything, she doesn't care

Me: i do care!

Him: You don't

Me: i do!

Him: if you did you would've at least wrote something at least even your name!

I felt myself getting fired up..

Him: You couldn't even write that Primary dentintion are milk teeth, you in a Dental school but you don't know that are you fucken kidding me?

Me: i don't know what you want me to say

Him: Just say it that you don't care! You don't deserve to be here, a more more deserving student could've been here right now doing a better job than you

I was close to crying..

Him: You wasting my time and your parent's time for sending you here!

I couldn't stop the tears anymore..

Him: Tears don't scare me

I stood up..

Him: See what i mean? You give up easily you don't care you don't wanna fight for what you want you don't have that drive.. You think wetting yourself like this is gonna make me feel sorry for you?

I looked at Tpee..

Me: Im leaving

Tpee had a smirk on his face, he was enjoying this..

Tpee: i bet 50mill you two are gonna get married if not fall inlove

Shaw: Don't start with shit

Me: Im married and very much inlove with my husband, i wouldn't marry him even if my life depended on it

Shaw: There's your answer!

Me: Tpee im leaving

I started walking out and left them talking about their own things, i was truly hurt i won't lie.

49

My last class was biology which came out at 15:00. I had called Wilfred to come and fetch me but surprisingly Danzo was the one who came instead of Wilfred..

Me: i thought that you'll be at work?

Him: i decided to take the rest of the afternoon off because we have alot to do

Me: like?

Him: Packing

Me: for?

Him: We moving into our new house

Me: i thought that we agreed to staying with Nazulu until we married

Him: she has Wilfred. Come on get in the car

I got into the car and he also got in..

Him: so are you hungry?

I shrugged my shoulders..

Him: i know this great Diner

Me: Okay

Him: i bought you a couple of things

Me: such as?

Him: laptop, phone, and a Tab

Me: Wow that's alot of Gadgets

Him: only the best for you

He concertrated on the road while i went on Facebook. I searched up Mr Carl Shaw and his Facebook account was highly secured. I think one has to be friends with him to actually see what goes down in his account, so what i did was to open a fake Facebook account under the name "Samantha Shaw" and sent him a friend request. Why am i going after him like this? I also don't know but maybe curiosity got abetter of me i really wanna know what kind of a person he is, is he really arrogant and rude? Or is he just putting on a front..

We arrived at the Diner and went inside. It was small but business was good because it was full..

The waitress came to us.

Her: Good afternoon

We greeted her back..

Her: may i take your orders please

Danzo: uhm we still checking out the menu

Her: No problem

Danzo: Before you go, can i ask you something?

She nodded..

Danzo: is Brandy around?

Her: Yes she just came in for her shift

Danzo: i would like her to be the one serving us

Her: very well sir ill let her know

Danzo: Thank you

She walked away and i looked at Danzo..

Me: Brandy?

Danzo: best waitress around her, she knows customer service

Me: That's good

I checked my phone again to see if Mr Shaw has accepted my friend request and he hasn't..

Danzo: waiting for a call?

I looked at him..

Him: You keep on checking your phone

Me: Im waiting for this friend of mine Landu to email me some notes

Him: Ohw and how was your first day?

Me: it was tiring. There's alot that's going on

Him: Im sure you will adjust

Me: i sure will

Another waitress came to us of which i assumed that it was Brandy. She was very pretty but her left eye looked as if like it was artificial..

Her: Good day

Danzo: Brandy

Her: Danzo

Danzo says that this is the best waitress around here but she doesn't even look like she's happy or feels comfortable serving us...

Brandy: Was wondering when you gonna show up again

Him: Can't deny a place that has good food

She took out her pen and pad from her Apron..

Her: What can i get you?

Him: i would like you to meet my wife first Terra

Advertisement

and Terra this is Brandy the best waitress around here..

She looked at me and smiled..

Her: How are you?

Me: Fine thanks and you?

Her: Im Good, can i take your order?

Me: pizza please

Her: Flavour?

Me: BBQ chicken and mushroom

She looked at Danzo...

Danzo: ill have whatever my wife is having

Brandy: coming right up

She walked away..

Danzo: before i forget i have something for you

He took out a ring from his pocket..

Him: to seal our traditional marriage

It was a pink diamond, the shape of the diamond was a princess cut..

Him: The stone is sapphire

Me: Its beautiful

He put it on my finger..

Him: may this remind you of how much i love you

Me: And its a perfect fit

Him: You like it?

Me: i love it

He leaned over for a kiss..

Him: i love you

Me: i love you too

I kept on taking pictures and uploading them on Facebook,
WhatsApp and twitter..

My phone rang and it was a land line..

Me: Can i take this?

Him: Who is it?

Me: Not sure

I answered...

Me: Hello

Mom: Mandisa

Me: Mom

I looked at Danzo..

Me: Can i go outside?

He nodded..

I stood up and went outside...

Me: Sorry mom im at a Diner and its noisy

Her: No problem i just wanted to know how your first day at school was?

Me: it was good mom, lots of work but ill adjust

Her: Im glad that school is going good

Me: say hi to Maryjane when you get home

Her: i will...let me go before Nazulu catches me

Me: Okay i love you bye

Her: i love you too

I hung up and went back to Facebook again. This time around Mr Shaw had accepted my request..

I went back inside but before going back to my table i went to the counter to get me a milkshake.

Me: Sorry Brandy i forgot to order something to drink

Her: Don't apologise Its my job to serve you, so what would you like?

Me: strawberry milkshake

Her: strawberry milkshake it is

She looked at my finger..

Her: beautiful ring

I looked at it and smiled..

Me: Thank you

She looked at me for a while..

Me: do i have something on my face?

Her: huh?

Me: You starring at me like i have something on my face

Her: Sorry about that just..

My milkshake came up..

Her: Here is your milkshake

Me: Thank you

I took it and started walking..

Her: Terra

I looked at her..

She wrote something on paper and then handed me the paper..

Her: My phone numbers one day they will come in handy

Me: weird.. But okay

I took the paper and put it in my pocket then i went to join Danzo..

Me: hope you don't mind i got a milkshake

Him: You can get anything you want, even this whole Diner

I laughed..

Me: Are you saying you can buy me this Diner?

Him: Just say the word

Me: You crazy

Him: Let's eat so we can go home

As much as my day was shit at school, but trust my husband to make it the best for me..

50

I had a delicious lunch with my husband, even though i found it a bit weird that Brandy gave me her number but then ill save them..

We went to the Zulu mansion to pack up everything of ours, Nazulu wasn't very happy with us moving out but i didn't really care about how she felt i was just happy that im gonna be living in a house that is half mine even if i didn't buy it..

We arrived at the house and "beautiful" does not even begin to describe it. I was absolutely and wholeheartedly inlove with it. The interior Deco did a good job..

So there i was jumping on the couches, loosing my mind i mean you will never understand how i felt at that moment. My life has always revolved around a 4 room house, we had no bathroom we had no Jacuzzi, we had no pool but here i am 21 years later living in a house that people mostly dream about and it ends there...

Danzo was glad to see me all excited about the house, and i appreciate him doing this for us..

He carried me upstairs..

Him: and this is our bedroom

He put me down..

Me: ohhh my goodness it is beautiful

I walked around while looking at those Marble walls, big bed that was in the centre, our own bathroom, closet everything was beautiful and i mean beautiful..

Him: and?

Me: Its beautiful

Him: but?

Me: so you got everything out here so perfect but you forgot about the Tv?

He chuckled..

Him: Wanted to save the best for last

He went to the Tv stand and got a remote. It didn't look like a Tv remote and he pointed it at the ceiling, then the tile flipped and a plasma popped out..

Me: What????

Him: You can even lower it to the Level you want, rotate it to a position that best suits you. Semi upright position looks more dooper....

I was starting to get all emotional.

Him: Come here

He hugged me..

Him: Don't cry

Me: Im just overwhelmed with different emotions ive never had nobody do something like this for me

Him: i told you that ill give you anything that your heart desires. As long as you respect me, love me, and never leave me

Me: That's easy

He kissed me on my forehead..

Him: You'll never leave me no matter what?

Me: No matter what

Him: Cross your heart and hope to die?

I pushed him a little..

Me: What are we? Preschool kids?

Him: i still want that pinky promise

I gave him a pinky promise, he then pulled me closer and Kissed me..

His phone vibrated as we were kissing,we tried ignoring but the person wasn't giving up..

Me: Better answer it

Him: better be someone important

He took it out and looked at it, he got a bit irritated..

He looked at it for a while then switched it off..

Me: Who was it?

He picked me up..

Him: No one important

We walked to the bed and he laid me down, while getting ontop of me..

Him: Can you buy those pills that you girls use because using a condom is starting to bore me?

He said that while slipping his hand inside my jean..

Me: ill consider that

Everytime when Danzo and i make love he becomes this beast that i don't know. Sometimes his bites would be a bit painful, stroking my hair, choking me at times and fucking me hard till i beg for my life..

At first i found it a bit uncomfortable but now i can say that im getting used to it..

We had 2 rounds after the second round i wasn't up for it, i was in pain so i decided to go to the bathroom and freshen up while he went downstairs to set up the cushions for us. We were

gonna have dinner on the floor, around our coffee table. Little bit of some romantic music, no lights and candles all around..

I went to the bathroom to take a long relaxing bath all those bite marks on my body some of them were a bit painful, he also left a trail of his teeth here and there on my body...

When i was done bathing, i didn't wear anything under i just put on the night gown and my sleepers then made my way downstairs..

Everything was set, Red & white candles, chicken salad, Red wine, Rose petals, romantic music playing and the lights were off...

He stretched out his hand to me..

Him: Shall we?

Me: We shall

I stretched out my hand to him too then he helped me sit down..

Him: Are you in pain?

Me: a bit

He sat next to me while wearing his vest and boxers..

He lowered my gown and kissed me on my shoulder..

Him: Im sorry but i hope that you will get used to it soon

Me: i hope so too

He kissed me on my cheek, forehead, and on my nosebridge

Helvetica, sans-serif; font-size: 14px;">Him: i love you

Me: i love you too

Danzo and i we are emotionally connected to each other,
physically&sexually attracted to each other too....

He lowered my gown more and ran his finger around my
nipple..

Me: Are we ever gonna eat dinner?

He laughed..

Him: Sorry i just can't get enough of you

I fixed my gown and we started eating..

This was heaven, i mean this has to be heaven..

The door bell rang..

I looked at him..

Me: We already have guests?

Him: ill check it out

He stood up and went to the kitchen..

I continued eating while waiting for our guest to come through but nothing. I waited and waited till i decided to go check who it was, and what i stumbled upon literally made me sick to my stomach..

Danzo and Noxolo were kissing, he even placed her on the kitchen counter..

I don't know if Danzo is sick or just a plain bastard..

As he was kissing her neck she saw me standing there and all she could do was to just give me a conniving smile while running her hands over him with her eyes closed and biting her lower lip to show me that "bitch i am feeling him"

Me: Da.. Danzo..

I was hurt, i was very hurt that my heart started beating so faint..

He stopped and looked at me...

Him: Shit!!

I shook my head and walked away and he followed me..

Him: Mash wait!

He grabbed me by my hand and when i turned to face him i slapped him right across the face..

Me: Leave me alone!!

Noxolo came too, i looked at her...

Me: You sick!

Noxolo: cut me the mother Theresa act!

Danzo looked at Noxolo..

Him: You can leave

Her: Excuse me?

Him: Why did you even come in the first place?

Noxolo pushed him..

Her: Fuck you Danzo!!

I yanked my hand away from his grip and walked upstairs leaving them arguing there..

I was done and did, i don't know where to from here but i am nobody's fool..

I got to the bedroom and put on my tracksuit and sneakers while crying.. I don't know where i was gonna go from here and in the middle of the night but ill find my way..

Danzo walked in as i was ready to walk out..

Him: What are you doing?

Me: Im leaving so your sister bitch can move in!!

He locked the door..

Him: Don't be crazy

I started walking up to the door and he pushed me back..

Me: get out of my way Danzo

Him: No you acting very crazy now! What happened to you'll never leave me? You swore and hoped to die!!

Me: go to hell!! (shouting)

He took the key from the door and Walked to the closet, then after he came back with a needle..

Me: What are you doing?

He grabbed me and jabbed it on my neck then he let me go..

Me: What did you do to me?

I was bleeding a bit from my neck..

Him: This is how you gonna leave me!

I looked at him and the demon in him had taken over..

I felt my muscles weakening, i felt weak i couldn't stand on my own anymore that i collapsed..

I was very much conscious but my whole body was paralysed the only thing i knew how to do was to only move my eyes around..

He started whistling while wearing his Jean and sleepers, he then picked me up and put me over his shoulder then walked out with me..

I wanted to fight and defend myself but i couldn't, i couldn't even move a finger, i was more like a potato..

We walked into the back room, he opened and it was very dark all i felt was hotness. He put me down on the floor then switched on the lights and closed the door too...

The only thing i saw was a coffin, and then he went over to open something that looked like an oven or chamber and i saw flames lingering from there..

He came and Crouched next to me..

He put his hand on my forehead..

Him: Im gonna put you in the coffin and in that chamber. You gonna die a slow painful death, alone. The flames are slowly gonna eat you up while you still alive, you would wanna cry and scream but you won't be able too..

He stood up and whistled again as he went over to open the coffin..

Shit just got real Danzo was gonna cremate me alive!

51

I was back in that white room again, only this time i didn't know if i was dead or alive..

Nokwanda was starring out of the window. The room was painted pure white, also had a white light shining through..

As i approached her i realised that she wasn't standing alone, but she was standing with Kenzo..

Me: Kenzo?

He turned and looked at me, i ran up to him and hugged him..

I felt safe in his arms, i miss Kenzo alot..

Me: i miss you

We broke the hug..

Him: i miss you too

Nokwanda came to us..

Her: and we meet again

Me: am i dead?

Nokwanda: No you have been in a Coma for quite a while now

Me: Coma?

Kenzo: do you remember what happened to you?

Me: do i remember what happened to me? I..

Everything was misty i tried to recall what happened to me but i couldn't Remember..

Nokwanda: Danzo tried to kill you, Remember?

I tried to remember again and this time around my memory didn't fail me..

Me: i remember the coffin, he tried to kill me, he injected me with something. I couldn't move, i couldn't do anything

Kenzo held my hands..

Him: Gummy unfortunately this is a battle you will have to fight without us

I looked at them..

Me: What?

Nokwanda: We cannot protect you on the other side of the world, we cannot reach you but like i told you there is someone who will help you

Me: Where is that person?

Nokwanda: When the time is right they will come through

Me: Can't they come through now?

Nokwanda: Everything has its own time

Kenzo: Gummy Its important that you remember everything we about to tell you right now, we don't have much time

Nokwanda: You the only one who can get justice for me and Kenzo both of us were murdered in the hands of those who claimed to love us

I looked at Kenzo..

Him: i need you to Find my killer Nazulu didn't kill me that night, but Danzo did. I need you to expose him and let him face what he did

Me: ohh my word, Danzo really killed you?

He nodded..

Nokwanda: Whatever you do, do not go to Tpee do not ask him for help

Me: Why?

Nokwanda: Its gonna create more war, Tpee is not a rational person.

Me: Then who can help me? I cannot fight Danzo alone he is too dangerous

Nokwanda: You need to reach out for help to that one person

Me: Nokwanda you speaking in riddles

Kenzo: Everything seems a bit misty right now, but the sun will soon shine through and everything will make sense

I felt my spirit as if like it was being dragged..

Kenzo: i love you, ill always love you.

Me: i love you too

He kissed me..

Him: When you get back to the other side, Remember act like you don't remember anything especially Danzo trying to kill you

Nokwanda: Its important that you act as if like you don't remember what happened that night

Kenzo: Its for your own good

Kenzo let go of my hands and i found myself being thrown out of the window by an unkwon force..

I slowly opened my eyes and everything appeared blurry for those few seconds. The beeping sounds, they sounded familiar i knew very well that i was at the hospital.. When my vision was strong enough to let me see what was happening around me, i saw Danzo and the Doctor talking..

I felt a bit drowsy

Advertisement

and my whole body was aching. I cleared my throat, they both made their way to me...

The doctor started shining that little light in my eyes..

Doctor: How are you feeling Mrs Zulu?

Me: Mrs Zulu?

He put the light back in his pocket..

Him: any headaches?

Me: uhm not exactly

He held up 2 fingers..

Him: How many fingers am i holding up?

Me: 2

Him: very good

He lowered the sheet then ran a pen on my legs..

Him: do you feel that?

Me: Yes

Him: That's good too

Danzo was standing right beside my bed observing everything with his arms folded, a part of me wanted to just jump on him..

Doc: do you remember what happened to you?

I looked at Danzo, then looked at the doctor..

Me: Yes i do

Him: What happened?

Me: My husband injected me with something that paralysed my whole body..

Danzo started laughing..

Me: then he tried to burn me alive

The doctor looked at me for a while..

Him: You don't remember overdosing on Heroin?

Me: Her..what?

Doc: Your toxicology report came back and you tested positive for heroin

Me: i am not on drugs!

I looked at Danzo.

Me: You bastard!

Danzo: The needle marks on your arm, they say alot my love

I checked my arm and i did have needle marks...

Doc: the girl you were brought in with that night your friend, she died you lucky to be alive

Me: My friend? I don't have any friends

I held the doctor's hand tight..

Me: He killed his brother, he is having an affair with his sister, and he tried to kill me too.. He was gonna burn me in this chamber at the back of his house please you have to believe me!

The Doctor looked at me..

Him: Calm down Mrs Zulu

Me: i am not Mrs Zulu!

Danzo put his hand on my shoulder..

Him: baby the doctors are trying to help you

I spat on him..

Me: do not touch me!!!! (yelling)

That set him off.. He looked at the doctor..

Him: When can i sign the forms?

Doctor: We still have to wait for Dr Beverly to do a psychiatric evaluation

Danzo: you heard the things she's talking about Doc, she is not stable enough to live in a society where she's exposed to drugs and other things that can worsen her mental state

Doctor: i am very much aware of that

Danzo: her mother already agreed to this, she's too heartbroken to be here

He took out a letter and gave the doctor..

Danzo: she signed it under oath that she agrees for her Daughter to be taken to a mental instution

Me: What??? I am not crazy!! (yelling)

Danzo: Honey we love you and we trying to help you

Me: i am not Crazy!!! (yelling)

Doctor: Mrs Zulu calm down please or i will have to sedate you

Me: i am not going to a mental instution im not crazy!!

Doc: i understand

Me: No you don't! He has filled your head with lies, he has manipulated you!

Danzo: Doc can i please be left with her for a couple of minutes?

Doc: Are you sure?

Danzo: She's my wife

The doctor looked at us and went..

Me: You gonna burn in hell!

Him: i spend most of my holidays there!

Me: What do you want from me?

I said that with tears falling, i was emotionally drained..

Him: i want you to stop this childish nonsense and be a good wife to me! After all you the one with a ring!

Me: Why should i do all of that if you don't love me?

He wiped my tears...

Him: That's were you wrong, i do love you

Me: if you did then you wouldn't cause me this much pain

Him: You causing this much pain to yourself, dammit Mash is this how you want me to treat you?

He calmed himself down..

Him: Maybe you do deserve to be locked up with crazy people for a while, maybe you will learn the hard way!

He kissed me...

Him: ill see you when they done doing the psychiatric evaluation so that i can sign your forms

Me: i would appreciate that very much

He gave me a weird look..

Me: Anything to be away from you, ill gladly accept it even if its a mental instution

He slapped me, and i turned head to face the other side

I heard him breathing heavily..

Him: do not test me! You don't know what im capable off

I kept quiet until the doctor walked in again..

Doc: Sorry to disturb but Dr Beverly will come by later to do the psychiatric evaluation so we can transfer your wife to St Thomas psychiatric instution with immediate effect

Danzo took a deep breath, then after he exhaled..

Danzo: that won't be necessary

Doc: Excuse me?

He grinded his teeth, he was ready to explode..

Danzo: i don't wanna put my wife in a mental instution anymore

Doc: but i thought you said..

Danzo: i know what i said but ive changed my mind

Doc: Mr Zulu if your wife is released to the society she..

Danzo: Doc please just cancel the whole psychiatric evaluation, my wife is not crazy she's just in a bad space

The doctor sighed..

Him: ill let Dr Beverly know

Danzo: Thank you

Doc: Excuse me

He walked out.. Danzo looked around and then went to close the blinds, he came back to me and started strangling me..

I stretched out my hand to press the button that was on the side of my bed so a nurse can come into my ward but i couldn't reach it..

[2 DAYS LATER]

I finally got discharged from the hospital. I had dodged the bullet of being admitted into a mental institution. Being in hospital gave me a lot of time to think, I cannot fight Danzo with emotions, I am alone in this fight so I need to be rational than emotional. I am going to take what Kwanda and Kenzo said to me seriously now because me being reluctant on what they told me almost landed Me in an asylum. My mother never even came to visit me, I don't blame her though because she thinks that I'm on drugs. The only person who came yesterday was Nazulu, she only came to irritate me that's all..

Danzo came to fetch me, I was relieved to be going home because again I have missed classes and I need to make up for that. Fortunately this time around I got a letter from the doctor that I was in hospital, that will keep the arrogant Mr Shaw off my back. I wasn't very happy with what was written in the letter, it was written that I was admitted in hospital because of heroin overdose I mean what are the lecturers gonna think of me after reading the contents of the letter?

On our way home we were very quiet in the car, we both didn't know how to communicate with each other, I was more concerned on the needle marks on my arm than anything else my arm was a bit swollen in that area and red....

We arrived at home Danzo went about his own business and i went upstairs to our bedroom. I sat on the bed and shed a few tears. It was very hard to accept the situation that i am in, and sadly i cannot leave him he will hunt me down and kill me since i made that promise that im not gonna leave him. If he doesn't hunt me down i will have to spend my whole life alone, thanks to Somandlakazi's stone i cannot fall for any guy. I know what Nokwanda said but even now my knight in shining amour hasn't come my way, my true love hasn't broken the spell..

I cuddled myself in bed, i was very shuttered you can not even begin to imagine what im going through at all....

Im living in this big beautiful house, i have everything i need, i am in a medical school but i am not happy at all..

All my life this is the life i have always wished to have, having a man that's gonna take care of me probably the reason why i fell inlove with Kenzo but now i would rather be with a broke guy who will love me than a rich guy who always put tears in my eyes..

Somehow as i was crying i remembered what that waitress Brandy said to me that "my numbers will come in handy one day" i guess today is the day..

I got out of bed, wiped my tears and went to search my pants until i found that little paper..

I searched for my phone until and when i found it i called her, fortunetly for me she answered..

Her: Brandy Hello

I was so eager to talk to her but my throat raised no words..

Her: Hello?

What do i even say to her? She's just a stranger..

Her: Terra is that you?

Me: Yes

Her: Where are you? Don't answer that if you in the bedroom slowly make your way to the balcony Danzo has Probably bugged the whole room or has a hidden camera around..

I stood up and lowered my phone then walked up to the balcony..

Me: Im at the balcony

Her: Good! Danzo doesn't have this number so if he checks your phone records tell him Its a friend from school, he can even call the number for confirmation

Brandy was talking as if like she knew him, she knew the monster in him what am i missing?

Her: We need to cut the call short not more than 30min as to not raise suspicion.. What has he done?

A part of me wanted to be honest with her

Advertisement

but how can i trust her? How do i trust that she's not working for him?

Her: Terra i know you scared, and you feel like you don't trust me but you have too he has done worse to me.. You have to talk because we don't have time

Me: He.. He almost creamated me alive then told everyone that i had a heroin overdose, even my family

Her: Ohw dear me, the coffin and cremation is the worst

Tears started falling and my voice started breaking..

Me: i was soo scared, he injected me with something and..

Her: and you couldn't move..

Her voice was breaking too..

Her: Okay what's the safest place we can meet? We can't meet at the Diner

Me: school?

Her: Where do you school?

Me: SMU

Her: Okay that's not far ill come during lunch, are you calling me with your number?

Me: Yes

Her: ill text you tomorrow.. Look for now just act like you wrong, apologise make him feel like the king he think he is.. Danzo likes being Dominant, he likes being showered with love, he likes feeling like he has total control of your life. Let him feel like that..

Me: Brandy..

Her: i know Its hard sweety but be that fool and you will beat him at his own game that is his weakness, that's how i beat him I closed my eyes as tears fell..

Her: i know Its hard but don't do anything stupid, we will find a way

Me: Okay

Her: Don't delete the call log because he will start fishing if my number appears in your cell phone records but don't appear on your call log

Me: ill do that

Her: ill text you tomorrow don't worry

Me: ill be waiting

Her: Bye

Me: Bye

I hung up and went to check Facebook with my fake Facebook account. Mr Shaw has accepted my request and even inboxed me..

I checked my inbox and his message read:

"Samantha Shaw? That's a unique identity not everyone has it"

I logged out ill talk to him later..

I made my way downstairs, for once im gonna take Brandy's advice and run with it...

As i made my way downstairs i spotted Danzo with the same guy who was holding me hostage as i was "kidnapped" so Danzo set up the whole thing? He was more sick than i thought..

I stopped because i felt myself breaking but i kept it together, i had to keep it together..

That is why he was treating me good because it was all a set up..

I made my way to them..

Danzo: i was about to get you upstairs

Me: whats happening?

Him: This is Soldier your new driver

I looked at Soldier. I didn't wanna alert Danzo that i had a plan up my sleeves so i played this situation smart..

Me: You look familiar

His eyes widened..

Him: i do?

Me: Yes you do, like i know you from somewhere

He cleared his throat..

Him: i get that alot..

Me: probably the medication they gave me at the hospital

Danzo put his hand around my shoulder..

Him: How do you feel with all this meds that the Doctor gave you?

Me: Fuzzy and disoriented, think i need to lie down

Him: i can see your eyes are testifying to what you saying

I looked at Soldier..

Me: by 7 am tomorrow you have to be here

Danzo: you wanna go to school tomorrow?

Me: im way behind

Him: Are you sure you gonna handle all the pressure?

I nodded..

Him: Okay then, ill come and check on you later

I kissed him on his cheek..

Me: i love you

He smiled at me...

Him: i love you too

I looked at Soldier as i was walking away...

Me: Was nice meeting you

Him: Same here

I made my way upstairs, at least Brandy's plan is working..

When i got upstairs i logged in on Facebook to chat with Mr Shaw luckily he was online. I checked his profile didn't have much interesting things...

*****Facebook Convo*****

Me: ya it is a unique name

Him: How did you get it?

Me: parents

Him: You blessed to have such a name

Me: means alot to you doesn't it?

Him: something like that

Me: Okay

He didn't reply..

Me: Tell me about yourself

Him: this is not mxit

I literally laughed...

Me: Are you always this arrogant?

Him: "always" sounds like you know me

That was a stupid move..

Me: Just judging from how you text

Him: Are you sitting next to me?

Me: No

Him: Exactly

Me: im just trying to make conversation

Him: i apologise then make conversation

Me: Just forget it

Him: Forgotten!

5min passed without us saying anything to each other until i felt the need to ask for advice from him.. He seems very smart..

Me: Hey Carl mind if i ask something?

Him: "Carl"

Me: Carl Shaw

Him: "Carl Shaw"

Me: Stop playing around

Him: Sounds like someone who knows me, rat + fish

Me: Can you be serious?

Him: fine sorry

I told him everything about the abuse to be exact, i even showed him the needle marks.. But i made it sound as if like "Samantha Shaw" was the one in an abusive relationship and not me, it was easy playing him since i was using a fake account and i had a fake profile pic of some girl i got from the internet..

Him: those needle marks don't really look like those of someone using heroin

Me: Really?

Him: more like you were drugged, the area of where the needle was inserted looks like the nerve is damaged and with heroin users they very vigilant on how they insert the needle and they

use a much thinner one than what you used or rather what was used on you, better go have it checked before you get a blood clot i see a hamorrhage

Mr Shaw was smarter than i thought

53

Danzo hired a chef who prepared a very delicious dinner for us that night. He was going above and beyond into making sure that i don't even lift up my finger to clean the house. We have one private chef and two maids..

Him: Are you sure that you wanna go back to school tomorrow?

Me: i have no choice, i really have to catch up on the work before my Semester tests start

He nodded..

Me: How is work going?

Him: Its going good, and Saturday we gonna have a very important guest

Me: Who?

Him: Mr Naidoo. Very important client of ours

Me: Okay

The Zulu company is very successful and making them alot of money but i still don't know what the company is all about...

Me: id better go to bed

I stood up..

Him: wait

I looked at him..

Him: Sit down we need to talk

I sat down...

Him: Im sorry about the other night

I wish that "sorry" would actually take away the nightmares i have at night about that incident. I wish "sorry" would erase what my family think of me. All i wanna do is to just throw the glass of wine at him, but then i am not going to give into emotions, i need to be logical and rational about this..

Me: i should be the one apologising

That statement took him by surprise..

Me: i reacted that way because i was hurt, seeing you and Noxolo just..

He stretched out his hand to hold mine..

Him: i know that my relationship with Noxolo is very disturbing, but i don't love her. I am only using her to bring down Nazulu and get the Zulu empire, when all that is done im gonna dispose her like a used tissue

Alot was going through my mind, he sounds and looks convincing but is he sincere about what he is saying?

He stood up and came to kneel right infront of me..

He took my hand and kissed it.

Him: i love you Mandisa Mhlongo and i want us to have a future together. You might find this hard to believe but i am sorry for hurting you like this i would like us to start over

Me: and Noxolo?

Him: She's not important

He stood up..

Him: lets go upstairs ill run you a bubble bath

I stood up and we went upstairs, he did run me a bubble bath. My body was tense, all those bathing salts and everything else relaxed me they eased my aching and tense body..

After the bath i went to bed..

I woke up the following day and prepared myself for school. I made sure that i take the letter with me, and i also bandaged my arm. It was red and swollen, at times it even gets itchy..

I ate breakfast then Soldier came to drive me to school..

I didn't give him any hints in the car that i know him and that he kidnapped me

Advertisement

i don't wanna raise any suspicions at this point..

We arrived at school, he dropped me off at the gate and i thanked him then made my way to the Dental building. I really wanted to serve my arrogant lecturer with the letter and give him no chance to be on my throat since Oral biology is always the first class we attend..

I went to the Oral biology&Pathology department and made my way to his office..

His door was opened and he was at his table going through some text book.

I knocked, his eyes made their way to me..

Carl is very handsome, he is neat, he smells good he is just perfect..

Me: Can i please come in?

He nodded and closed the textbook..

Him: What can i do for you Ms Mhlongo?

I took out the letter..

Me: im sure you have noticed that i haven't been around for the past few days

Him: Its nothing new

Me: i have a letter from the hospital

I handed him, he read..

After that he looked at me..

Him: i never knew that you were into drugs, heroin perse

I was starting to feel hot and dizzy..

Him: Have you tried to go to rehab?

Me: Im not into drugs

Him: The letter says a different story "Samantha Shaw"

My throat and my mouth went dry immediately...

Me: Samantha Shaw?

He gave me a side smile then looked down, he looked at me again..

Him: if you gonna open a fake Facebook account don't use your real number in the process, that's how i tracked you down

Me: How did you even get my number?

Him: i have my ways

Me: Can i please have a manual so i can go to class?

He stood up and went to get it for me, he looked at me before handing it to me..

Him: Are you okay?

Me: Im fine

He looked at my arm..

Him: Take that off

Me: No

He put the manual on the table, and then grabbed my arm to unwrap the bandage..

Me: What are you doing?

Him: saving your life

He looked at my arm...

Him: do you scratch your arm?

Me: it gets itchy

Him: Sit down im coming

I sat down and he walked up to the door..

Him: Don't scratch it either

He went out and came back with a bowl of water and a cloth..

He took another chair and sat opposite me..

Him: this is gonna sting a little

He dipped the cloth in the water and put the cloth on my arm, it did sting..

Me: ouch...

I closed my eyes...

Him: it stings?

Me: Yes

Him: You will be fine

Me: What's in the water?

Him: disinfectant

Me: i see

Him: Why are you still with this guy?

Me: Complicated

Him: uncomplicate it

Me: You won't believe me

Him: try me

Me: a certain stone was put in my heart. If i leave him or fall for another guy im gonna die

He laughed..

Me: i once kissed some guy and i vomitted blood

He continued laughing..

Me: Just forget i said anything

Him: no im sorry Its just that..

I stood up..

Me: ill be going to class now

He stood up too..

Him: i wanna test your theory

Me: What theory?

He pulled me closer to him and kissed me..

That was very unexpected but the kiss felt right, it felt very right..

He ended up putting his hands around my waist and i had my one hand on his cheek and another around his neck..

After 30seconds we broke the kiss but we were still very much close to each other and breathing heavily..

Me: i.. I have to go to class

Him: You go to class

He moved out of my way and i Walked to the door..

Him: Your manual?

Me: Yes i forgot about that

I went to get it from him and our hands touched.. We looked at each other right in the eye and i don't know how to explain how i felt at that present moment but i felt something..

54

I was in class now attending Oral biology. I was still thinking about the kiss, thinking about why I didn't vomit blood and end up in hospital like how it happened with Tpee. Carl was teaching and carrying on like nothing happened, he didn't even seem to be affected by what happened earlier in his office. Although I was in class, but my mind was very far away. I was confused how come the stone didn't act up when I kissed Carl? Could he be the one that Kwanda was talking about? It cannot be, it seriously cannot be.

I was brought back to reality when Carl flipped a page on my manual, I looked at him..

Him: Dentine is on page 4, that's where everyone is and that's where you should be too

Me: yes sir

He walked to the front...

Him: I said you guys must go and prepare for today's lesson on Dentine. By a show of hands, how many people prepared?

The class went quiet..

Him: again, by a show of hands how many people prepared?

I was mostly concentrating on his pink lips moving, his pure white teeth showing, he wasn't wearing any coat today and he

had rolled his shirt sleeves revealing a tattoo, his short black hair that suited his image perfectly. He was more hot when he maintains that arrogant look of his.

Him: then why are we here? Are we here to waste each other's time?

He looked at his wrist watch...

Him: I would've used this time to do something else

There was something about Carl that I really couldn't get my head around it, he was every girl's dream. Not soft, a bit firm, and I could tell that he probably is good in bed too..

Again I was brought back to reality when he called my name.....

Her: Ms mhlongo?

I looked at him and composed myself by sitting up straight. All attention was now on me...

Me: yes sir?

Him: care to share with the whole class what you day dreaming about?

I looked around and all eyes were on me..

Me: uhm no sir

Him: so we discussing something important and you have the audacity to be day dreaming in my class?

Is he seriously throwing me under the bus right now?

Him: do I look like a clown?

Me: no sir

Him: is my voice a sweet lullaby that swifts you away smoother than swiftkey?

The class laughed..

Me: no sir

Him: please excuse yourself, get yourself some water and fresh air

Me: that's not necessary sir I am fine

Him: I wasn't asking you

His facial expression said to me that he is serious..

I stood up then went outside. I was more shocked than angry at what he did.

The class was finally came out, I was standing outside waiting for Landu. Our second class was psychology which we gonna be attending at the auditorium with other first years. I just hate crowded places.

Landu came out and we made our way to the auditorium..

Me: how did the lesson go?

Her: he didn't teach, he went out after 5min

Me: that bastard is full of himself can't we report him to the dean?

Landu: you wanna go that far? Girl I will not back you up I don't want trouble see how Mr shaw is? He will bury us alive and my mom will kill me if I ever get suspended I was not born with a silver spoon in my mouth.

I understand what Landu is saying and Im totally for her statement last thing I want is to disappoint my mother more than I already have..

Psychology was very boring I was sitting at the back were I couldn't be spotted just busy going on Facebook and Twitter..

I then got a WhatsApp message from an unknown number

Advertisement

I checked the profile picture and it was Carl. A part of me wanted to ignore him, but I couldnt my heart wouldn't allow me..

*****Whatsapp convo*****

Him: how is your arm now?

Me: why do you care?

Him: I don't

Me: then why you crowding my space?

Him: is this about me kicking you out of class?

Me: nice going with that!

Him: Im not gonna give you special treatment just because we exchanged spit!

Me: you nasty!

Him: I take after you!

Me: you disturbing me Im in class

Him: then why are you still responding?

Me: Im not anymore

Him: bye

Me: bye

I put my phone back in my pocket while smiling like an idiot..

Landu: I don't think this lesson is amusing enough for you to be smiling alone

Me: huh?

Her: are you daydreaming again?

Me: what? No.. Don't be silly

I took my eyes off her and focused on the slides, or at least I was trying to..

After psychology we attended our last class then after we went for lunch. I was waiting for Brandy to call or text but nothing, she actually stood me up. I thought about calling her but then I can't risk her numbers showing up more than once in the phone records so I just let her be. I kept on wondering why she stood me up, did Danzo find out and hurt her? I was thinking the worst..

She put me out of my misery when she sent me a message saying that the reason why she couldn't come was that her son was sick, she had to take him to the hospital but she will come tomorrow during lunch time. That was a big relief..

We attended the rest of our classes and this time around our last class came out a bit late, at 17:00..

Soldier called me and told me that he is already waiting for me at the gate. I said my goodbyes to Landu and walked to the gate..

I passed the parking lot where I spotted Carl walking to his car. I didn't see what car it was but it was definitely a sports car..

He didn't see me because he was on his phone, something that you cannot separate him from..

I didn't wave or call him out I just walked to the gate where soldier was waiting for me..

I got inside the car and he drove me home..

Soldier and I don't exchange words in the car, I'll be on Facebook and he will be driving..

I got home and Nazulu was around with Noxolo, and Noxolo wasn't very happy to see me..

Me: good afternoon

Nazulu: it's hardly afternoon, kudala ilanga lashona (the sun long set)

I put my bag on the table..

Me: ya I didn't realise that

Nazulu looked at Noxolo...

Her: xolo are you sure you wanna stay here for a while? I hate being alone..

I looked at Noxolo..

Me: stay here for a while?

She folded her arms..

Her: yes, I'll be visiting for a couple of days maybe even weeks got a problem with that?

Nazulu: a week? Kodwa Xolo I thought we agreed on a week?

Noxolo: mama you know that I don't like staying at home nje so this is not new

Nazulu sighed..

Her: its fine, let me go Im sure Wilfred is waiting for me

She hugged noxolo...

Nazulu: ubuye phela Xolo (please come back)

Xolo: I will mama

Nazulu: okay I love you

Xolo: I love you too

Nazulu looked at me..

Her: bye Terra

She said that while looking at me from head-to-toe

She then walked out leaving me with the snake of her daughter..

Her: so which bedroom am I getting Mrs Zulu?

I didn't answer her..

She picked up her luggage bag..

Her: don't worry I'll find my way

She walked upstairs, the nerve though!

I took out my phone and called Danzo, he answered on the fourth ring.

Him: Mrs zulu

Me: ya Danzo your mistress is here

Her: mistress?

Me: Noxolo!

Him: uthini? (what are you saying)

Me: can I at least go and crash with my friend Landu for a couple of days at Res while you get rid of this tramp?

Him: you not going anywhere!

Me: it'll be good for me Danzo plus I need Landu to help me catch up on my school work I have missed alot

He kept quiet for a while...

Me: Danzo?

Him: fine but only for 2 days

Me: thank you

Him: I'll drive you to the res when I knock off

Me: no problem, and thank you for taking my education serious

Him: since its important to you, it's also important to me

Me: I love you

Him: I love you too

I hung up then went straight to WhatsApp to text Carl..

Me: want a visitor?

My heart was beating when that message went through, I hope he doesn't switch me off but right now I'd rather be with him than to be here..

55

Carl didn't reply to my whatsApp, so i took it upon myself to call tpee since they close and ask him about where Carl lives.

I know people might take what i am doing as somehow, but there is definately something about carl and me. I mean after the situation with tpee I expected the same thing to happen when Carl and I kissed but nothing happened so there's definately something between us that hasn't been uncovered as yet..

If Carl can really help me then I need to reach out to him very fast before Danzo does what he did again..

Tpee: that's a first, recieving a call from you

Me: I know and im afraid that its not a social call

Him: then what is it?

Me: I need a favour, a big one for that matter

Him: Im listening

Me: can I please have Carl's address without any questions asked?

Him: Carl's address?

Me: yes this is when the friendship card comes into play

Him: I can't give you Carl's address without me knowing what you want it for

Me: I thought I said no questions asked

Him: yeah Carl is an important person and he has people after him, the last thing I want is home boy getting assassinated

I knew tpee was gonna be somehow about this so now I'm forced to tell him the truth.

Me: I didn't wanna tell you this but Carl and I had a moment today

Him: moment?

Me: we kissed

Him: you kissed?

Me: don't reply to my statements with a question

Him: I'm just surprised at everything, I mean you kissed me too and I don't hear you asking for my address

I laughed...

Me: you know it wasn't like that between you and me, it was just a hit of the moment

Him: and with Carl it was different?

Me: exactly

Him: I seriously don't know about giving you Carl's address he is a private person, very private

Me: please tpee

Him: fine im gonna give you, but only because I'm trying to get you away from that useless boyfriend or fiancé of yours

Me: thank you very much

Him: Ill sms it to you

Me: I'll be waiting for the sms

I hung up and didn't delete my call log, last thing I want is Danzo asking me questions I won't be able to answer when Tpee's number shows up in the phone records and doesn't show up in my call log..

He did sms me the address, Carl lives in Pretoria north, not so far from the res.

I packed a few clothes and my toilet bag

Advertisement

then waited for Danzo. I didn't go downstairs I stayed in the bedroom to avoid noxolo's annoying ass..

Danzo finally made it home at around 19:30,he looked very much exhausted I was even thinking that he will refuse to drive me to res.

Me: you look tired

Him: you have no idea

He came up to me and kissed me..

Him: are you ready to go?

Me: yes all packed up

He looked at me...

Him: I believe that you won't give me any reason to be busy checking up on you

Me: no reason at all

Him: you will behave?

Me: it's not a social visit honey gonna be studying and all that, I have my books with me. I actually have more books than clothes

Him: good girl

I have just dodged the bullet..

Him: then let's go

He took my things and we went to his car..

Me: when I come back after 2 days can I please not find noxolo here?

He clicked his tongue...

Him: That one pisses me off you will never know what she's doing here

Me: I want her gone

Him: and she will be

I was very quiet for the rest of the trip just thinking about how Carl is going to react when I show up at his door step, I hope he doesn't cuss me out..

We arrived at Res and Landu was waiting for us at the entrance.

Me: hey girl

Her: hey

Me: this is my fiancé Danzo zulu

I then looked at Danzo..

Me: honey this is my friend Landu

Danzo gave her a handshake.

Him: nice to meet you

Landu: thank you, sorry for being forward but you cute

Danzo chuckled..

Him: thank you

As we were standing there my roommate Lerato showed up..

Her: Terra?

Me: hey Lerato

She came and hugged me..

Her: are you moving in?

Me: uhm not really

Her: Res management wants to give me a roommate but I told them that I have a roommate

Me: I'll fix that issue

Her: okay then umm it was really good to see you

Me: same here

She walked away... Security didn't give me a problem since I'm supposed to be residing here, when they looked me up my name showed up and they let me through but I let Landu go upstairs while I walked Danzo to his car..

Him: I'll come and fetch you after 2 days then

Me: 2 days it is

He hugged me..

Him: behave

Me: I sure will

Him: but I trust your friend she doesn't look like one of those bad influence

Me: she is well groomed

Him: I'll call you tomorrow, wanna get home and sleep

Me: okay hun no problem

He kissed me..

Him: I love you

Me: love you too

He got into his car and went..

I went to Landu's room and explained to her that Im gonna go visit a friend that my fiancé doesn't like and I was using her to cover for me. She wasn't very happy to hear that but after a few minutes she loosened up..

Before heading to Pretoria north. I changed to a different outfit and put on a bit of make up, I didn't overdo everything I didn't want him thinking that Im trying to impress him even though I was..

Landu walked me in search of taxis to Pretoria north, and this taxi situation was crazy I ended up getting a lift from some couple who lived at Pretoria north and they dropped me off at

Carl's street and I made my way to finding his place with the address that Tpee sent to me. It was very hard searching at first because it was dark and couldn't really see the house numbers, but after a great deal of searching I finally found it..

Looking at his house from outside it wasn't that big like my house or Tpee's house but nevertheless it wasn't bad. I could see it almost clear because of the bright lights in his yard..

I checked my WhatsApp and he hasn't replied that was a disappointment..

I went to the intercorn and out of nowhere 3 big dogs came charging to me thank grace the gate was closed or else they would've had me for supper. I stood there all frozen while they barked at me..

After a while I saw this girl coming to the gate wearing pjs and a robe. She was the one I saw from Carl's pictures on his notice board, only difference is that she looked older now could be around 19 years old..

The dogs stopped barking when she came through

Her: hi can I help you?

Me: hi I am Terra I am Carl's friend

Her: he has never told me about you

Me: it's a recent friendship

Her: ohw I see.. But can I help you?

Me: I'm here to see Carl

Her: Well Carl is not here and this is a private residence I cannot let you in

Me: please it was very difficult for me to get here with all the cab situation.

She looked at me for a while..

Me: I am not a total psycho. You can call him and find out he knows me

She still looked at me then after she opened the gate..

Her: come

I looked at the dogs..

Her: they won't bite when you with me

I slowly made my way to her.. The dogs surrounded me and I held on to her..

Her: come on boys run along

The dogs went and she closed the gate and we went inside the house..

Her: I am Jeany, Im Carl's sister

Me: you pretty

Her: thank you

She really looked great with her short hair..

Her: didn't you speak to Carl?

Me: I tried but his not responding

Her: something to drink?

Me: coffee please

She went to hit up the kettle

Me: where is he?

Her: date night

Me: huh?

Her: he went out on a date with his girlfriend Sonia, they should be on their way back by now

That was a blow to my face, Carl has a girlfriend?

56

CARL

Ever since my parents died when I was young it has always been me and my little sister Jeany, my little bug's bunny.

I love Jeany more than life itself, she comes first in my life before any other woman..

Life got real for us when she was diagnosed with cancer, Leukemia to be specific. I knew then that I had to grow up fast and make hard decisions to make sure that I don't loose her. I am what people consider a "Genius" or at least that's what my crew thought of me...

When I passed my matric with 7 distinctions I got a bursary to go study architecture and my sister was left in the care of my aunt the only surviving relative that we knew and that we were left with..

My Aunt struggled to afford treatment for my bunny because she was dependant on her R3000 a month which she made through selling Things. I was forced to do something to take care of my aunt and my sister that's when I joined a gang called "The bloods". They rob banks etc they not just your typical amature gang, they were professionals. I was hired to be the brains behind every operation, I would draw up plans on how they can go to a bank get the money and walk out smoothly, it

was hard though I have to go to the bank and observe everything and also fish for information from people who work there... Me being intelligent came as a curse and a blessing at the same time, but as I worked with the bloods I started making real money and before I knew it, I was getting my sister everything I could even afford her treatment I made sure that she gets everything that her heart desired..

Although with all that money and being able to get her good doctors even from overseas that wasn't enough, she was still dying what was needed to save her was a donor..

There ain't much donors especially with Leukemia so her chances of surviving were pretty slim to none, I was loosing her and there was nothing that I could do about it, I was able to do everything for her but I wasn't able to buy her life....

My relationship with the bloods ended when I betrayed them. You see when you a member of such gangs you always have people coming for you and with me I didn't know how to protect myself since I was only the brains of their operations..

Betraying the bloods was not by choice, their rivals were holding my sister and my girlfriend Sammy hostage and to save them I had to lead them to the diamonds that the bloods stole from some mine..

Sammy was my first love, and by that I don't mean that she was my first girlfriend but she was the first girlfriend that I was very much in love with. Sammy wasn't an Angel Although her nick name was angel but when we dated I got to learn that she was a prostitute..

I saved her from that life by having my friend tpee kill the woman that Sammy was working for to set her free from that life..

After that things went from bad to worse, Sammy was diagnosed with hiv and now I had to get her and my sister treatment and that's something that really hurt my wallet since I wasn't with the bloods anymore. We went broke and Sammy got really sick and she passed on, that's when I started believing in the mayans when they predicted that the world would end

Advertisement

because when Sammy passed on that's when my world ended..

I was now left with Jeany and I couldn't let her die too, I had tpee pay for her treatment until I got back on my feet..

I stopped doing gangs because that shit doesn't end well although Im currently in tpee's gang but I'm not fully committed to it and it's just 4 members we all successful so we don't do illegal things we just protect each other..

To cut the story of my life short I started forging qualifications, at first I was a lawyer, and now I'm a lecturer. All my qualifications were perfectly forged and I made sure that I have alliances to pose as my witnesses should I be investigated I have contacts in high places so my contacts in UCT came through for me in confirming my story that I graduated under them. It was extra hard having to forge everything but then I did and it's been 3 years now since I've been a lecturer. How I got to know everything in my field was to just buy textbooks and school myself then after school the students really not rocket science if you were blessed with a brain like mine...

Later on I met Sonia and she's the reason why my sister is still alive today, she's the reason why Jeany got to reach the age of 18 and is living a healthy life free from cancer...

Sonia's sister was Jeany's donor out of all these years trying to find a match for Jeany and when we couldn't I just gave up until we found out that Sonia's sister was a match. Sonia convinced her sister to agree, took her about 6 months to agree and after the whole surgery her sister didn't make it unfortunately she died...

Her death was very hard on her family especially Sonia so I have been with her ever since..

I won't say I am in love with Sonia, but I feel like I owe her for what her sister did for my sister...

I don't love her as much as she loves me but I don't care because I never really opened up my heart to another woman after Sammy's death..

We were driving back home, and our date night this week didn't go so great. It was my turn to choose what we should do this week, and I thought that I could take her out to where they spin cars so she can do something different but she didn't enjoy that not even a little while on the other hand I enjoyed myself..

I looked at her as I was driving..

Me: I don't know what you angry about

She looked at me..

Her: wow!

Me: we always do what you wanna do, but because tonight I wanted to do something different its an issue

Her: how do you call what you did different? you were flirting with other girls the whole time and ignoring me!

Sonia is very very jealous, and exaggerates alot..

Me: I just had a minor conversation with one girl and you now making it an issue?

Her: minor conversation? Minor conversation carl?! (shouting)

Me: what you yelling for? Im right next to you, you psychopath bitch!

She pushed me..

Her: and you a jerk!! (shouting)

What I do most when she's like this is to laugh just to show her that she's acting stupid..

Her: you don't love me, you don't care about me or my feelings! Because all of this is a damn joke to you!

Me: a minor useless conversation with a girl has proven that to you? That I don't love you and care about you?

Her: just get me home carl!

Me: we almost there

We arrived at our place and I parked the car close to the garage. We got out and she made her way to the house while I waited for my dogs to come to me as always but they didn't..

That was a bitch, could it be that someone forced their way in and hurt my Rottweilers?

I whistled and they barked in the garage...

Me: jeany!

I quickly rushed to the house...

Me: Jeany get your as..

My eyes landed on Terra as I made my way inside..

Me: Terra?

Sonia: he knows her so there's nothing to ask

Sonia walked away..

Terra stood up..

Me: how the hell did you? What are you doing here?

I didn't know what to ask her first, what she's doing here? Or how she found my place..

Jeany: Ill be in my room if anyone needs me

Me: Ill deal with you later

She walked to her bedroom, I looked at Terra she didn't know what to say..

Me: how did you find my house? This is a private residence!

Her: im sorry

Me: how did you find my house?

Her: Tpee

Me: fuck me!

Her: its not his fault

Me: then why are you here?

Her: check your WhatsApp

I took out my phone which has been on silence and I read her Message "want a visitor" ..

She left me speechless I didn't know what to say at all..

.

.

TERRA

Carl was very upset with me and I don't blame him. Her girlfriend seemed pretty upset too when she found out that I'm just a student she assumed that Carl and I were having an affair... She thought I was one of those girls who sleep with lecturers to get to the top...

Carl looked at me and I could see that I had drained him of all his power and strength he just didn't know how to react..

Me: I really didn't mean to cause any problems

Him: does your husband know you here?

Me: he is not my husband

Him: whatever he is to you!

I slowly shook my head no..

Him: he doesn't know?

Me: at all

Him: let me guess you lied to him to get here?

I nodded..

Him: the same guy who wanted to burn you alive?

I nodded...

He leaned over on the kitchen counter and folded his hands then kept quiet for a while..

After thinking for those few seconds he looked at me..

Him: we gonna call him

I looked at him..

Him: the last thing I want is a mental unstable dude after my ass I've had a lot of that baby and Im done.. What you gonna do is call him and tell him to fetch you, I don't wanna be part of the craziness between you and him..

Is he serious right now?

57

TERRA

I was standing in the kitchen alone while sobbing, Carl cannot possibly do this to me especially after he knows what Danzo is all about. I mean calling him now to come and fetch me, that would be the death of me tonight..

I know that what i did was most definately me being too forward, but i really thought that Carl and i could have something and that he can help me in this whole Danzo odealr but i guess i was wrong..

Carl came back, he stood at the doorway that led to the sitting room and looked at me waiting for me to finish or stop crying..

Him: so is he on his way?

I shook my head no..

Him: did you call him?

I shook my head no..

Him: why?

I shrugged my shoulders..

Him: go on and crash in the guest room, ill take you wherever you wanna go tomorrow morning

That was a relief. I didn't say much, i made my way to the guest room then threw myself on the bed and started crying. I felt like i was trapped, ill never get away from Danzo's tight grip. I wanna fight him, i wanna fight for my freedom but i cannot do it at least not alone..

My night in shinning amour the one that Nokwanda has been talking about can come now, he can come and help me do away with this Evil called Danzo...

I tried very hard to sleep after crying but it was hard. Everytime when i tried closing my eyes, i would recall what happened that night vividly. The coffin, my helpless body laying on the floor, the burning chamber with flames lingering ready to swallow up who ever was gonna be put inside of it.

I had nightmares about Kenzo, his last moments in this world, how he must've suffured and struggled when he was fighting for his life, with that ligature around his neck squeezing the life out of him with no one coming in to help him..

Everything played like a movie in my head, my kidnap everything came back at that moment haunting me..

I then got out of bed and made my way to the kitchen i wanted to warm up some milk, and the second i set my foot in the kitchen the alarm went off..

I started panicking because i didn't know how to turn it off and mostly i didn't want anyone waking up i have caused enough problems as it already is for this people..

Moments later, Carl and his sister walked in. carl was holding a baseball bat.

Jeany went and turned the alarm off..

Me: i am very sorry i just wanted something to drink i didn't know that there's an alarm

Him: its alright

Jeany: well im gonna go to bed since there's no danger

She walked to her bedroom..

I looked at Carl..

Me: again i am really sorry

Him: its okay

He was trying so hard to avoid starring at my body. I was in a bum short and a spaghetti top

i wasn't wearing any bra. I don't see any use of wearing a bra because my breasts are very small, i only wear a bra to hide off my pointy nipples..

He leaned the bat against the wall..

Me: ill just go to the bedroom

Him: yeah sure

I didn't even get the milk i started walking to the guest room when Carl and i stood in each other's way. When i tried going right, he went right too but it wasn't Deliberate..

We finally stopped and looked at each other..

Me: i should be going to bed

Him: me too

He came closer..

Me: Carl please don't

It was almost as if like my words were falling on deaf ears..

He ran his hands on the sides of my arms, his touch was very gentle and safe...

I don't know what was about to happen, but i ain't going to stop it..

He kissed me and i kissed him back, funny enough i didn't vomit.

We continued kissing, he was running his hands on my body and i was running my hand and fingers on his soft hair..

We kept on kissing, then he picked me up and placed me on top of the table. He got in between my legs and i wrapped them around him...

He put his hands under my tshirt and started gently massaging my breasts while squeezing them too..

Carl was taking me to another planet that i didn't know exists..

While we were slowly getting into the mood he stopped..

Me: what happened?

Him: im sorry we can't do this

That was a bummer but i totally understand. He has a girlfriend and im practically married..

Me: its fine i understand

I got down from the table and he was still standing very much close to me..

Me: Good night

He looked at my lips then bit his lower lip..

Him: Good night

I attempted to walk away but he pulled me back to him..

Me: Carl..

Him: sorry but you making this very hard for me

He started squeezing my small butt..

Me: we can't do this here, at least not while your crazy girlfriend is around

He chuckled...

Me: was that a chuckle?

Him: involuntary movement of facial muscles

Me: whatever

We kept quiet..

Him: have lunch with me tomorrow in my office

I looked at him..

Me: what is this?

Him: two people who seem to be attracted to each other having harmless lunch together

Me: tempting as it is but i can't im meeting up with a friend tomorrow

Him: my loss

Me: mine too

Him: next time

I nodded..

Him: its late, you should go to bed

Me: night

We kissed again and then i went to bed..

.

.

CARL

I was woken up in the morning with Sonia making noise. I looked at the time and it was 05:00am..

She was singing along to one of Beyonce's songs..

Her: "no no no no.. You don't love me yes i know now"

I find it very hard to sleep when there's noise..

I got out of bed and went to switch off the music, she was sorting out the laundry..

Her: hey!

Me: its too early to make noise

Her: if you failing to notice, i am about to do laundry

Me: can't you do it quietly?

Her: no!

She switched on the music again, since there was no point in arguing with her i went to the bathroom. I washed my face and brushed my teeth then made my way downstairs..

I first passed by in the guest room to check on Terra and she was still sleeping...

I don't know what's happening, but i find myself being very much fascinated by her. She's feisty, a go getter, annoying at times but i like her alot. Thinking about her showing up at my house like that unannounced this girl has it in her..

I found myself laughing alone as i closed the door..

I walked to the kitchen and then made myself some coffee..

My sister showed up in her full school uniform, what was off was the make up...

Her: morning

I looked at her..

Her: what?

Me: Bunny you shouldn't be wearing make up like that

Her: im 18

Me: and with that you look 25

She threw an apple at me..

Her: that was offensive!

Me: go wash that off

Her: no

She took her bag and made her way to the door..

Me: i wish one woman in this house can listen to me!

I continued drinking coffee while i thought about random things until a sweet voice disturbed me..

"good morning"

I looked at the door way and Terra made her way in..

Me: Morning

She has one of the most sexiest thin bodies that i have ever seen, not forgetting how beautiful she was.. This guy whose busy abusing her like this, he clearly doesn't know how lucky he is..

58

TERRA

Carl and i drove to school that morning. I left my things at his place because he didn't mind me returning which was some new developments considering the fact that he wanted me out of his house the first night..

We even found it hard to act normal when we was in class which was something new on his side too...

Danzo hasn't called me, not that i am complaining but its very strange i wonder what he has been up too..

I haven't been communicating with my family either especially after the drug saga i still don't know how to face them. I know my mother is very much disappointed in me..

I tried calling my sister MJ, but no response on her side so i decided to let them do the calling...

School was as usual, we were now preparing for our big up coming tests, some subject or course rather called Oral Health comes with alot of work and too much studying.. I will have to give in 100 on that one too..

I am very determined to work hard and pass all my modules..

Brandy did show up this time around during lunch time, i was very scaptical i thought she was gonna stand me up again..

I bought us some lunch then we went to sit on some chairs at the park..

Me: im glad that you made it this time around

Her: im very sorry about the last time

Me: i totally understand you had an emergency

She looked at me...

Her: you don't look like someone who needs help

I smiled..

Her: you look happy what is going on?

Me: still early to tell

Her: ill ask some other time then

Me: and ill tell

We both laughed..

Her: so how is the mighty Danzo?

Me: i haven't been home lately

Her: that would explain the pictures on Instagram

Me: what pictures?

She took out her phone and showed me..

It was pictures of Danzo and Noxolo looking all cosy..

Me: son of a bitch!

Her: they have been spending some quality time together

Me: i can see that.. He told me that he will get rid of her while in the meantime he is actually fucking her!

Her: Danzo has always been a dog

Me: a sick one!

I looked at her..

Me: so what is your story with him?

Her: ex, high school sweethearts

Me: wow

Her: it was wow until he showed his abusive side

Me: how?

Her: let us not go there what we should be thinking about is how to Vanquish him like the demon that he is

Me: its gonna be hard won't it be?

Her: he is very smart so it is

I then heard Landu calling me, that's great because now Brandy and i won't be able to talk..

Me: that's just great!

Her: looks like we gonna talk some other time

Me: yeah

Landu: there you are I've been looking for you all over

She sat down...

Me: I've been here

She looked at Brandy..

Me: brandy this Landu, Landu this is brandy

They greeted each other..

Brandy: let me go and prepare for my nightshift

She stood up..

Me: thank you for coming

Her: anytime

She walked away as i continued chilling with Landu..

After lunch we attended the rest of the classes and our last class came out at 16:00,i then went to Carl's office so we can go home..

Funny how i call his house "home"

I stood at the door and i was starring at him as he was reading..

It took him about 2min to notice that i was standing there..

Him: done attending?

I nodded as i made my way in...

Him: let's go then

He stood up and packed up his things and then we walked out to his car..

Him: at least tomorrow its a holiday we will spend some time together

I smiled at him..

Me: at least

He wanted us to go eat out but i refused because it would be dangerous to be seen in public together..

We finally arrived at his house and i was dead tired all i wanted to do was to just relax..

The house was very quiet..

Me: where is everyone?

Carl came and put his hands on my shoulders while kissing me on the neck

Him: Sonia went home, Jeany does a lot of extra classes so we all alone until Jeany gets back in an hour

I turned around and looked at him

Me: anything in mind?

Him: a lot

He picked me up and then we walked to his bedroom.

We got there and started kissing

Advertisement

we couldn't keep our hands off each other. I wanted him as much as he wanted me...

We continued kissing while undressing each other fastidiously...

Him: are you sure about this?

Was i sure? I don't know..

I nodded..

He went and sat on the bed while i went and sat ontop of him, we kissed again and he was squeezing my body closer to his..

It was an unexplainable moment when our bodies were rubbing off against each other.. This felt right, how he was running his hands on my body all the way up stroking my hair was truly amazing. Carl was handling me with care unlike Danzo who just wanted to fuck me for the sake of pleasuring himself and forgot that i also have to enjoy it's a two way experience...

He laid me on the bed and came over me as we continued with our 4play. I shut the whole world out at that moment it was just me and Carl no one and nothing else mattered..

Carl had a great body, especially his upper body. He had a big tattoo it was something like love. Respect. Loyalty....

It was more than just a sexual moment we were emotionally connected as if like this is meant to happen..

He put the condom on while i ran my hands on his 6-pack..

When he was done, he opened my legs and his hands were on my butt chicks and he just let his tongue play around while i moaned and grabbed on his pillows..

Me: Caaaaaaarl...

He then stopped and came up, he slowly inserted his hard shaft it was a bit uncomfortable i gasped.

Him: im sorry

Me: its okay

He started off slowly and then increased his pace, when i screamed out his name he softly whispered mine next to my ear..

We made sure that we come together, i grabbed on to his short hair..

Me: Caaaarl!!!!..

Him: Terra!!!!!!...

We then both came and he collapsed ontop of me..

That was very very good i won't lie..

He rolled over as we tried catching our breaths..

After a few seconds he took off the condom and went to dispose of it..

I got up then made my way to the bathroom..

I felt the need to pee, i made my way to the toilet and peed..

I felt something popping and coming out i looked down and it was that white stone that Somandlakazi told me to insert down there so that i don't sleep with other guys but Danzo..

I couldn't believe it..

Carl: Terra?

Could it be that Carl is my???

I wiped myself then rolled a towel around my naked body..

He was now wearing his boxers..

Him: i was wondering where you disappeared too

I just ran up to him, we both fell on the bed when i jumped on him with me being ontop..

I started kissing him..

Him: what's gotten into you?

I looked at him..

Me: i love you

His eyes widened, why the fuck i said that i have no idea!

Me: uhm.. I.. I don't know where that came from

I got off him..

Him: Terra its okay

Me: im really sorry

Him: really it's okay

I was embarrassed i quickly walked out out the guest room and closed the door behind while i sank on the floor thinking about what i said to him...

59

TERRA

What i said to Carl was a bit premature and i have been feeling very much somehow about it. I wish i had restrained from saying such..

I was on my way to the kitchen to make myself something to eat when i bumped into Carl cooking in the kitchen, i thought of turning back but it was late he had already seen him..

Him: decided to come out of the bedroom?

Me: uhm yes

Him: that's good

Me: again im really sorry

Him: for?

Me: for saying what i said

Him: you should never apologise for how you feel

Me: can we at least pretend as if like i didn't say anything?

He nodded..

I went up to him..

Me: what are you cooking?

Him: i don't know, but im hoping it takes good

Me: how do you cook something that you don't know?

Him: i do this alot

Me: i see

He looked at me..

Him: i must say that im having a great time with you

Me: me too although you wanted me out when i got here

He picked me up and placed me on the counter next to the stove..

Him: yeah you don't just show up at someone's house like that

I put my hands around his neck..

Me: im a risk taker

Him: and i like risk takers

He squeezed my thighs and kissed me. We kissed until the door opened and he quickly stepped away from me and checked on the pots..

It was Jeany who walked in...

I think she saw what happened so she looked at us in a weird way...

Her: hi

We greeted her back, Carl checked the time on his wrist watch..

Him: you late!

Her: and now i see the reason why i am late

Carl: where have you been?

I went to the mall with friends...

Carl: ya but you didn't tell me

Her: if i did call where you even gonna answer?

Carl: that's not the point

Her: fine im sorry i didn't call

Carl: hope we won't have a repeat of this

Jeany: we won't

She walked to the stairs but then stopped..

Her: my friend is throwing a birthday party on Saturday can i go?

Carl: no

Her: im 18

Him: so?

She exhaled defeated

Her: i shouldn't have even asked

She walked up the stairs i looked at Carl...

Me: Carl

He looked at me..

Me: why do you treat your sister as if like she's 3 years old

Him: what do you mean?

Me: call me when you go to the mall with your friends, no you can't go to the party..

Him: you won't understand

Me: but..

Him: don't get involved in my relationship with my sister

Me: sorry

Him: you can make yourself useful and prepare the table for dinner

Me: sure why not

I got down and prepared the table for the 3 of us..

Later on i went to bath and then we had dinner in silence. It was very awkward..

When we were done eating, Jeany and i washed dishes..

I didn't know what to say to her especially after what she saw earlier..

Her: thank you for helping me wash the dishes

Me: you most welcome

Her: so what are you studying?

Me: Dental Therapy

Her: that's good

Me: and what do you want to do after matric?

Her: modelling, but my brother will never agree

Me: your brother treats you like a kid

Her: i know he is just scared

Me: of?

She kept quiet for a while..

Her: i think we done so good night

Me: night

I can see that no one wants to talk so im just gonna let this go..

I went to the guest room and i was busy playing with my phone until i got a text from Danzo saying he will pick me up at around 11am tomorrow..

I didn't wanna go home at all that text ruined my whole night until i fell asleep..

I woke up the following day and prepared myself, Carl was disappointed that im leaving early so was i, he had plans for us but we postponed them for next time...

He drove me back to the Res and i was saddned when he left..

I called Landu and she came to get me from the entrance...

She was acting really strange when i chilled with her until Danzo came to fetch me, it was almost as if like she was hiding something but i let it go.....

Danzo showed up at 11:00,looking fresh as always. He helped me get my things to the car, i said my goodbyes to Landu and then we drove home..

Him: so did you have a good time with friends?

Me: yes i did, and thank you for letting me visit the Res

Him: you welcome

Things were very awkward between us, it was more as if like we were strangers than a couple there was not much communication in the car at all..

We arrived at home and i went to put my things in the bedroom. I went to put my toilet bag and towel in the

bathroom when i found a bra in the dryer. I took it and went to Danzo. I flashed it right in his face...

He didn't look shocked, no remorse it was almost as if like this was done deliberately..

Him: noxolo forgot it

Me: you let her sleep in our bedroom?

Him: yes

Me: wow!

He showed no emotion at all..

Me: what's going on Danzo?

Him: what where you doing at Pretoria North?

He caught me off guard with that..

Him: 34 Spenika Avenue

Advertisement

Carl Shaw resides there what were you doing there?

My knees got weak the same time, my throat got dry, my heart started beating way too fast...

I was aiming at the door, to just run away.. As i implemented my plan it failed dismal, he grabbed me by my hair and threw me down..

He came to me and punched me repeatedly on my left eye and he was wearing rings in all his fingers so you can imagine the pain i was going through..

I was feeling dizzy, i was bleeding, it got to a point were i was numb in that area.. I lost all vision on my left eye.. He got off me and i got up. I was dizzy, i couldn't even see my surroundings..

I thought he was done until i felt a rope around my neck, it was soo tight i couldn't breath, i couldn't scream it was terrible..

He pulled it and i fell then he dragged me across the room with it.. The rope was tearing in through my skin..

He dragged me down the stairs while kicking me several times on my back. Every kick i felt a sharp pain down my spinal cord..

He dragged me outside, the sun was shining bright that did no justice to my eye..

He dragged me right to the cottage outside while swearing at me too..

We got there and he tore all my clothes until i was completely naked..

Crying didn't help, screaming was no use either..

He made made me hug a pole that was there, he then tied my hands so i don't escape with my back facing him he whipped

me with a cable.. All that manly strength he took it all out on my back..

It was an excruciating pain that he was putting me through, i was bleeding i could even feel that my skin was peeling off..

Me: Danzo im sorry.... (crying)

It was more like he was possessed he wanted to kill me..

I thought of everyone that i loved at that point, my family and carl..

He got tired after a while and stopped. i heard him breathing fast because of exhaustion..when i thought he was done he took off his jacket and whipped me all over again..

60

TERRA

I don't know when and how i passed out, but then i was woken up by something licking me. It was painful because my wounds at the back were still fresh. I couldn't see anything anymore my left eye was totally shut, and the vision on my right eye wasn't helping much either. I was sweating the temperature of the room had increased because of the burning chamber and the fact that Its a very small room...

I was drained, i was dizzy, i was just done the only thing that had been preserving my soul was thinking about the time that i was with Carl, how we made love that was one moment in my life were i was happy..

I heard someone talking but it wasn't Danzo it was a male voice that i wasn't familiar with..

Voice: You are really a tough bitch!

He whistled..

Him: Come on boy!

I heard a Dog barking, so they actually had a dog licking my wounds..

I cannot begin to tell you how i was feeling at that moment, both emotionally and physically. I felt like dying no human being can do this to another human being..

The tears poured out one more time..

Me: Kenzo!!.. Kwanda... Carl!!

Neither of them responded, and i don't think that they will save me.

As i was crying i felt nauseated and i felt very light headed i then vomitted,i felt like i had vomitted something that was solid i ran my fingers were i had vomited and i stumbled upon the stone..

Being happy or relieved about it was gonna be useless because im gonna die either way...

.

.

CARL

I was taking an afternoon nap when i heard a sharp cry next to my ear.. I have been trying to ignore it but it sounded like Terra and i felt deep down that she was introuble. The way i heard her crying and using her last strength to call out my name, i knew that she was in serious trouble and needs help.....

I got out of bed and went to wash my face in the bathroom and looked myself in the mirror. Terra's scream was piercing through my ear-drum i couldn't ignore it i need to find her and help her..

I made my way downstairs

my sister was with her friends at the kitchen when i entered they started acting Jumpy as if like they were up to no good and they got busted..

Me: What's happening?

Her: Nothing

They made their way to the lounge..

Me: Jeany

She stopped and looked at me..

Her: i didn't do it

Me: didn't do what?

Her: Im not introuble?

Me: Are you supposed to be?

Her: No

Me: then you not in trouble

She sighed in relief..

Me: What are you up too?

Her: Nothing

Me: You 18, you can no longer be stressing me like how you used too when you were young

Her: Ofcourse not, what do you take me for?

I looked around then gave her a serious look..

Her: can i go join my friends?

Me: in a minute. I need a favour

She came closer...

Her: What favour?

Me: i need you to call Terra for me

Her: Why don't you call her?

Me: long story

Her: umm ooookay

I took out my phone and gave her the numbers, and she called..

Her: Its off

Me: try again

She tried again..

Her: still off

Me: Okay Thank you

Her: is everything alright?

I nodded..

Her: Well then ill be with friends

Me: before you go i have one last thing to say

Her: Yes?

Me: You can go to that party you been talking about

Her: Really?

Me: yes.. Now go to your friends before i change my mind

She came and kissed me on my cheek then went back to her friends..

I then called Tpee..

Him: boy

Me: Yeah nigga

Him: You can't say Nigga that's racist you are white

Me: Fuck you!

He laughed..

Him: What can i do for you?

Me: i need Terra's address

Him: What am i, Google maps?

Me: i think she's in trouble and might need help

Him: not long ago she wanted your address now you want hers

Me: nigga are you gonna give me or not?

Him: What kind of trouble?

Me: She once told me about her nigga being abusive to her and i think he might have done something to her

Him: Shiiit

Me: Yeah

Him: You can't go alone, Danzo is gonna turn you into Mince

Me: He doesn't scare me

Him: says a guy who doesn't even know how to use a gun. Look i will Sms you the address, i hope he still lives there he used to live in that house with his ex long time ago

Me: Thank you

Him: Don't go in alone, ill meet you there we'll go inside together

Me: Cool then

I hung up and he Smsed me the Address..

I went straight to my car and drove there at least it wasn't far just an hour drive..

I arrived there and i did as i was told,i waited for Tpee who showed up after 30min..

Him: whats up?

Me: Im Good

We greeted each other with a handshake and a side hug..

Him: What's happening nigga?

Me: Just have this great feeling that Terra is introuble

He gave me a weird look..

Him: feeling?

Me: Yeah a feeling

Him: You made me drive all the way here just because of a feeling?

Me: something is wrong im telling you

I walked up to the gate and he followed me...

Me: shouldn't we be ringing in?

Him: manual gate

We pushed the gate and went inside..

We got to the door and i just opened it. We found him at the kitchen busy smooching another girl. He was wearing a vest and boxers, the girl was wearing a bra and denim shorts..

Tpee: What the??? You kissing your step sister?

Me: What?

He looked at Tpee..

Him: says someone who almost married his own step sister!

Tpee: Yeah i wasn't married to anyone else then unlike you

The girl looked very embarrassed..

Tpee: do you even know that i hit it first?

Danzo: hit what first?

Tpee: Ask her

Danzo looked at the girl...

Him: What is he talking about?

The girl kept quiet..

Me: Im not here for no bold and the beautiful drama, im here for Terra.

He looked at me..

Him: and who the hell are you?

Me: Your worst enemy

He laughed..

Him: is that supposed to be a threat?

Girl: ill go upstairs and give you some space

She walked away..

Tpee: Just give us Terra and we will gladly leave

Him: Terra is my wife

Me: Where is she?

Him: again who are you?

Tpee: Danzo just give us Terra and we will leave

He looked at us..

Him: close the door behind you

He started walking away..

Me: should i involve the cops?

He stopped and looked at me..

Him: Terra went out

Tpee: Went out where?

Him: went out with friends i don't know were

I saw right through him that nigga is fucken lying..

Me: Excuse me

I went outside to call one of my homies Detective Morris to come with a few of his colleagues to do a thorough search in this house because something just doesn't feel right..

61

CARL

Detective Morris showed up with a few Constables to search the house and i could see that this Danzo guy his knees were getting weak, his heart was beating fast from his chest and he was getting cold feet..

Me: i called Detective Morris to come and search the house for any unsavory activities

Danzo looked at me i could feel his heart doing a lub-dum sound..

Morris: if the owner of the house doesn't have a problem, we can start with the search..

Tpee: Danzo wouldn't mind since he has nothing to hide right?

Danzo chuckled..

Him: true that but i think you need to have a Search warrant to be going through every part of my house don't you?

Everyone kept quiet..

Morris: that is true but if you have nothing to hide, then you wouldn't mind us searching through

Me: And mind you Terra is not here isn't she? She went out didn't she?

Danzo sent out a conniving devilic smile.. I don't know how the Devil smiles but through Danzo i saw it all..

Him: Detective come with that search warrant, then we can talk!

He then walked away...

I looked at Morris..

Him: We have to leave this premises

Me: You can't be serious

Morris: i don't have a Search warrant, and i can't go through his house searching that's against the law..

Me: Im sure there's something you can do?

Morris: unfortunately there isn't

Tpee: Detective im sure you can get a Search warrant

Morris: Yes i could if this guy broke the law or if he was suspicious of any criminal activities but he is not..

Me: He is abusing his pratical wife Terra both Physical and Emotional!

Morris: that is a huntch! This Terra girl did she even report the abuse did she?

Me: No

Morris: then im sorry Shaw but the is no case!

Tpee: What if she was scared to report? What if she was Threatened?

Morris: Sir i don't work with "What if" i work with proof and so far there isn't any that this guy is abusive let alone his girlfriend or fiance or wife coming through

Me: Morris you get that search warrant!

Him: Shaw i am not Jesus or God i cannot perform miracles. The court will only grant me a Search warrant if and only if there's any charge or crime attached to this guy, but since there is no any so my hands are tied

Me: i know that an innocent soul is in danger! How many abusive spouses come front to say "i am abusive" don't they all want to be hidden? Don't they all want to be viewed as superman? You a Detective im sure you have come across abusive relationships?

He was all quiet for a while clearly showing that he is thinking..

Him: Im not promising anything, and getting a Search warrant on a clean guy will be hard

Me: Im sure you can do something

Him: ill try but im not promising anything

Me: That's all i wanna know

Tpee: Can we now just get out of here?

Both me and Detective Morris agreed..

..

[5 Days later]

TERRA

I don't know how i got out of that room, i don't know who saved me and how i survived everything, but all i know is that i opened my eyes and i couldn't clearly see my surroundings or recognise anything, but all i know is that i was safe, i then recognised Danzo's voice in all of this... Recognising his voice was not that hard, he can cough and i would recognise it, he is the devil that had tormanted me all this past days so recognising his voice or scent wasn't that difficult...

After a few minutes of me opening my eyes i was well aware of my surroundings and everything else

i saw that i was in our bedroom with Danzo starring at me while folding his arms..

Him: You have been out for a few days, need something to drink? Im sure your throat is very dry..

He went over to the small table that was at the centre of our bedroom and poured water in the glass.. He then came with the glass to me and set me up straight forcing the water to go down my throat. I gulped some but the rest, went over on the sides of my mouth..

He put the glass ontop the side drawer..

Him: Your mom and sister have been calling to find out how you holding up?

I kept quiet..

Him: waiting for you to get your strength up so we can come up with a good convincing story

Some guy walked in the room..

Him: time for my patient to take her meds

I assumed that was the doctor..

He fed me a lot of pills that made me pass out after a few minutes.

#CARL

I had just finished teaching my class and it a week`s time we will be writing our Semester test. Oral biology is just a 5-6 months course off which we only write one Semester test in a year and if you fail it you will have to repeat the year unfortunately. But

the university and the department is fair if some of the students fail the Semester test we implement an injury test so they can Redeem themselves and if they fail the injury test, then Its their doom..

The class packed their manuals away ready to go and attend another class, i asked Landu to stay behind for a few seconds..

When everyone had walked out i talked to her..

Me: Thank you for agreeing to stay behind

Her: Its okay sir

I've seen Landu and Terra being very much close so i can say that i trust her at this present moment to give me information about Terra since Morris was taking long with the search warrant..

Me: When last did you talk to Terra?

Her: been a while

Me: a while being how long?

Her: a few weeks

Me: Have you tried calling her?

Her: Yes but her phone is off

Landu was no great help at all..

Me: Thank you Landu

Her: Okay Sir

She walked out..

As i was about to walk out too i recieved a text from Detective Morris saying that they the court has granted him a Search warrant and tonight they going for the kill in searching Danzo's house..

I couldn't wait for Danzo to be arrested, he will not see this coming to him..

#TERRA

I was a bit better but all those pills they pumped me with made me sleep the whole day... My eyes and soul was tired Yes, but my heart wasn't. As i laid in that bed all i could do in my heart was pray..

Some of you will think that i was praying for my soul to be free but i wasn't, my prayer went as follows:

"Dear God

I pray that may Carl feel my pain. I don't know much about love God but i know that in 1Corinthians verse 13 you have stated that without true love you are nothing. I don't know about true love but if Carl is my true love, then let him feel my pain. Don't give him rest until he feels fully what i have went through this

past days and still is going through. God don't give him rest or peace until he realises the great pain that i have gone through, make him feel the pain not physically, but emotionally through his heart. Let my emotional and physical pain pierce through his heart, let him feel it to the deepest core. God don't give him rest until he realises my pain"

I closed my eyes after saying that prayer from deep within my severely broken heart..

#CARL

I was packing my things from my desk to my laptop bag ready to go home and prepare the Semester test. I was very worried about Terra missing the test, but after what Morris said i hope they search Danzo's house and find her because i know nigga be hiding something..

When i was done packing i made my way to the to the door, but when i was about to exit i felt this sharp pain piercing through my heart...

I couldn't avoid it, it was very sharp and painful that i felt like i was having a heart attack..

I didn't know what was happening but i held on to the door so i don't collapse but the pain was very painful and disturbing...

62

CARL

That night, i went with Detective Morris and a few Constables to go and search Danzo's house. What made everything so fascinating was the fact that Danzo has no clue about us coming, he won't see what hit him..

I know that he has done something to Terra, i can feel it deep down..

We gathered at his kitchen i looked him straight in the eye just to show him that Nigga i got you this time around..

Morris: Sorry to just rock up at your house like this, but i have a Search warrant

He passed it to him..

Danzo: couldn't you come in the afternoon?

Morris: i got it this afternoon

Danzo looked at it for a while, he then looked at us..

Him: Searching my house won't be necessary detective

We were taken by his statement..

Him: Anna please bring my wife

What looked like a Nurse showed up from the living room, she was wheeling Terra into the room. Seeing Terra in that state broke me. A few days ago she was up and walking, she was her bubbly idiotic self and now she's in a wheelchair. She looked distressed, she looked drained and tired, her left eye was swollen. I looked at Danzo and the anger in me drove me straight to him when Morris held me back..

Me: What did you do to her?

Morris: Calm down Shaw!

I looked at Terra...

Me: Terra i am here to help you, i have brought help with me. I am with the cops, you can tell detective Morris what Danzo did to you

Morris walked up to her..

He flashed his badge to Terra..

Him: Miss Terra i am Detective Morris. I was called out here because it was suspected that you are being abused. I want you to tell me everything, nobody is gonna hurt you don't be scared.

Terra looked at Danzo, then after she looked down..

Terra: i.. A few days ago i lied to my husband that im going to visit my friend at Res, but in actual truth i was going to visit

Carl. I got to the Res and convinced my friend to cover up for me and she didn't deny. I then headed straight to Carl's place at Pretoria North and..

She paused..

Danzo put his hand on Terra's shoulder..

Terra: i.. I found Carl and his Girlfriend, and his girlfriend wasn't happy to see me there. Carl was angry on his side too so he asked me to leave, it was late at night i begged him if i could stay a night but he refused

Me: What?

Her voice started breaking, she had tears in her eyes..

Her: i then went out and just walked around until i got attacked and r.. raped

That was shocking, that was very shocking..

Me: Terra you don't need to lie

Morris: Are you certain about what you saying?

Terra nodded her head yes

Advertisement

i was starting to get very aggravated. I hit the table.

Me: bullshit!!

Danzo: Detective the person you should be investigating is this dude right here kicking a vulnerable woman out at night

Terra looked at her Nurse...

Her: i would like to go back to my bedroom

The Nurse nodded and wheeled her out..

I attempted to go after her..

Me: Terra!

Danzo stopped me...

Him: Stay away from my wife!

Me: if you touch her again or hurt her i swear on my parents graves i will kill you!

Danzo: threats detective, im being threatened

Morris: Shaw lets go

He came and got me..

Me: Touch her again i will kill you!

Morris pushed me out..

Him: Calm the fuck down!

I looked at him..

Me: Don't tell me that you believe that

Him: Ofcourse not, she is covering up for him. Ive worked on such cases before and that behaviour is one of an abused woman

Me: What do we do now? there has to be something

Him: if she doesn't talk there's nothing i can do

Me: Morris..

Him: Shaw i can only help someone who wants to be helped that's my line of work, what i can do is to just have suvilliance every now and then come check the house for any unsavory activities

Me: and what am i supposed to do? Sit back and wait for her to die?

Him: Don't get involved in situations that will put you in hot water. This guy seems dangerous and he can throw you under the bus. I suggest you go home now

This situation was very fucked up..

.

.

TERRA

I was in the bedroom, at the balcony to be exact. I was getting fresh air and also thinking about what i was forced to do. I

know what i said about Carl was not true but me lying was the only way i could protect him from Danzo's wrath..

I heard the sliding door opening, Danzo walked in. He came and Crouched next to me..

Him: What you said back there was good

I kept quiet..

Him: When you feel better ill have your mother and sister come visit you, wouldn't that cheer you up?

I nodded...

Him: although i do alot of fucked up shit, but deep down i am a good person and i forgive you. I forgive you for this stupid affair you been having with Carl

I closed my eyes trying to prevent the tears from falling..

He stood up and kissed me on my forehead..

Him: i love you

He then walked away.....

2 weeks passed and i was recovering very well, i wasn't even using the wheelchair anymore. Danzo gave me peace for that time being he was hardly at home so i spent most of the time alone..

He has put me on Antidepressant pills, so i can live with what happened. I was drinking the pills, the first few days they made me more depressed, but now they make me numb to any pain or depression...

Today i was going back to school and later on Danzo promised that he will bring over my Sister and my mother i was happy and yet nervous to see them..

After Soldier had dropped me off at the gate, i slowly made my way to attend Oral biology. I haven't seen or spoken to Carl ever since that incident and i don't know how im gonna face him...

I made my way in class, i was even late the class had already started.

All eyes were on me, i just looked down and made my way to my chair..

The class continued as i sat down.

Carl was trying so hard to ignore me, it was hard for him and it was also hard for me too..

He kept quiet and then looked at me..

Him: You can be excused

I looked at him puzzled...

Him: class started 10min ago, you late so you can excuse yourself

I stood up and took my bag..

Him: matter of fact never ever attend my class

Me: Carl

Him: Mr Shaw

Me: Mr Shaw...

Him: i have already spoken to the Dean and i was given rights to let you not attend my class ever again!

Everyone was looking at us..

Him: You disrupting the class, other students wanna learn unlike you who doesn't give a flying colours about your education right now

I didn't say anything, i excused myself just like i was requested too....

63

TERRA

I didn't attend the next classes, i decided to go to Carl's office so we can talk, we needed to talk. I had been pacing up and down the corridor i was nervous to go in and face him especially knowing the person that he is...

I decided to gather strength and then walked in. The door was opened and he was standing at his book shelf with his back facing the door..

I knocked..

Him: Its open

He said that with his back still facing the door...

I made my way in with my pumps making less noise..

I stood at a distance from him and kept on breathing in and out trying to calm my nerves.

It was a bit quiet, the only noise that engulfed the room was him paging through the textbook..

Me: h.. hi

He stopped what he was doing, turned around and looked at me..

Him: Can i help you?

He put the textbook down and folded his arms while looking at me..

Me: Can we talk?

Him: We are talking aren't we?

I looked down, i didn't know what i was gonna say to him..

Him: i have to prepare for class BDS 3 students will be waiting for me so if you don't wanna talk....

Me: Im sorry Carl

He kept quiet for a while, i wasn't even looking at him i was looking down all the way..

Him: Why did you do it?

Me: i wanted to protect you, had i told the truth Danzo wasn't even gonna be arrested for at least a year he was gonna come out and come for us and i didn't want that happening

Him: Why did you feel the need to protect me? What makes you think i can't protect myself?

Me: Danzo is dangerous and i wouldn't want you getting hurt because of me.

He didn't say anything..

Him: do you eat ice cream?

I looked at him and nodded..

Him: Flavour?

Me: Vanilla or chocolate

Him: then you lucky because i always keep a tub in my mini bar fridge

He walked over to the fridge..

Him: but mine is vanilla with bar one sauce

Me: Its fine

I sat down and he filled the mugs with ice cream..

He walked over and handed me..

Me: Thank you

Him: i usually take mine with coffee liquer

Me: alcohol?

Him: Something like that

I started eating...

Me: tastes good

Him: it should be because Its damn expensive

I chuckled and he did too..

Me: do you think i can still pass all my modules?

He leaned over and balanced his chin on his hand..

Him: do i think you still stand a chance to pass all your modules? Yes you do. Do i think you can pass the year? No i don't think so

Me: That's disappointing

He leaned back..

Him: What did he do to you?

I didn't know what to say..

Him: i saw you in that state, im even surprised you made it

Me: Better to show you

I stood up with my back facing him and i lifted my top..

Him: i see a bandaged all around

I lowered my top and sat down..

Me: that should say alot

Him: Your eye is getting better

Me: Thank you

Him: Look you might not be able to catch up with all the work, but i think that you can try to be serious with the classes that are not far ahead so that when you repeat the next year, you don't repeat alot

Me: Think im gonna loose my bursary i have disappointed Tpee

Him: Bursaries are strict

I looked at him.

Him: What?

Me: Can you help me

Him: help you?

Me: speak to Tpee for me

Him: ummmm no

Me: Carl please i cannot loose my bursary

Him: You should've thought about that before bunking classes

Me: i did not bunk

Him: Whatever helps you sleep at night

I ignored him and then took out my phone..

Him: so you just gonna act like i don't exist?

Me: You don't

Him: What a shame

He looked at my phone...

Me: And now?

Him: give me your phone

Advertisement

51, 51); font-family: "Open Sans", Helvetica, sans-serif; font-size: 14px;">Me: Why?

Him: give it to me

I gave him my phone..

He literally opened it..

Me: What are you doing?

He looked at me without saying anything then went back to doing my phone no mercy and justice..

Him: Son of a bitch!

Me: What?

Him: he bugged your phone

Me: bugged my phone?

Him: he basically has been listening through to every conversation you have with anyone

Me: Through phone calls?

Him: No

Me: Wait you telling me that he could've been listening to us?

Him: even when we were having sex

Me: Bastard!

Him: he is smart i give him that, he knows that you always have your phone with you so he used it as a tool to spy on you

Me: Who does that? No wonder why he has bought me the phone

Him: Sounds like an obsession he has with you

Me: i doubt.. So what are you gonna do?

Him: Nothing

Me: Really?

Him: Nothing much

I exhaled..

Him: or i can..

Me: You can?

Him: use his own tool and technique to bring him down

Me: How?

Him: Have your phone record everything

Me: And how will that help?

Him: it can help put him behind bars for abusing you

Me: or better yet i can actually have him confessing to killing Kenzo

Him: Kenzo?

Me: His brother

Him: Okay hold up, he killed his brother?

Me: Yes

Him: Then we can have him confess, killer confession to taint him with murder

Me: Won't he find ways to get out?

Him: gonna be hard with a confession like that

Me: right on partner

I raised my hand up for a high 5..

Him: You actually have to come all the way around to give me a high 5..

I stood up and went to to his side, i raised my hand up to him but he reached out and pulled me closer, making me fall on him..

Me: ouch!

Him: Sorry

Me: mind my wounds please

Him: i said i was sorry

Me: Its fine

Him: so you still wanna keep your bursary?

Me: Yes

Him: ill talk to Tpee

I put my hands around his neck

Me: Really?

Him: Yeah but only on one condition

Me: Yes?

Him: You must do a favour for me too

Me: What kind?

Him: You'll find out when i need the favour

Me: What if its one i cannot fullfil

Him: Then you don't want the bursary

Me: i do.. Okay fine ill do it

Him: if you deny i will make you loose your bursary and make sure you don't get to study at any university next year do we have a deal?

I looked at him for a while.

Me: Why do i feel like im gonna regret this

He shrugged his shoulders.

Me: Its fine

Him: then ill call Tpee

Me: Thank you

I was a bit concerned about the favour, what if its one that i won't be able to fullfil

Him: Ohhh ummm ill ask for the favour tonight

Me: sex?

Him: Im not that desperate

Me: Excuse you?

Him: Well i..

I still looked at him..

Him: lets just kill it

Me: Whatever

He leaned closer and kissed me, this is the moment that kept me alive when i came face to face with death..

64

CARL

I drove straight home after the lectures i had today. Sonia was back and im glad that she was back because we really needed to talk..

Me: Hey

Her: Hi

Me: How was home?

She shrugged her shoulders while taking things from her luggage bag back to our closet..

Her: How was your stay with Jeany?

Me: Was as usual

Her: no uninvited guests showing up?

Me: no

She looked at me then continued with what she was doing..

Me: i have to talk to you

Her: about?

I kept quiet for a while, she didn't even look like she was interested in hearing what i wanted to say..

Me: i think you should move out

That caught her attention..

Her: moo.. Move out?

Me: i just need my own space that's all

Her: so i don't give you space? Im hardly here im mostly at home

Me: but you act like you live here your whole wardrobe is here

Her: Im not denying that, but im hardly here

Me: i know that but i think its best if you can move out completely

She stopped folding the clothes...

Her: What's going on for real?

Me: Nothing i just need my space that's all

Her: You the one who asked me to move in

Me: and now im asking you to move out

Her: What really is going on?

Me: i think its best for us

She didn't say anything..

Me: Sonia we always fighting, we don't get along and that's not healthy. When was the last time that we actually was a romantic couple?

Her: Are you dumping me?

Me: No i... I just need my own space back

Her: after everything Carl, even after how my sister sacrificed for your sister to be here and this is how you gonna do us?

Me: That's another reason why i feel like we need a break because you forever going to blackmail me with that

Her: Im not blackmailing you im just..

She took a deep breath..

Her: is there someone else? Is it that girl who was here the other time?

Me: Im not doing this because there's someone else but im doing this because i don't wanna go further with this relationship

Her: You want me to move out, you want a break, and now you dumping me? What is it Carl? Because im not understanding what's going on

My phone rang, i checked it and it was Morris...

Me: i have to take this Its Morris

I stood up and went to answer it outside the bedroom

Me: Yeah?

Him: The Unit is ready

Me: That's more like it

Him: What you want it for?

Me: something serious

Him: is this about the Danzo guy?

Me: Could be

Him: i thought i told you to stay out of that guy's business

Me: You know me Morris

Him: You know i can loose my job sending the Unit like this?

Me: i was with them the whole week,they understand my situation and they wanna help me

Him: You like putting me in difficult situations

Me: You my home boy, i helped you get that job remember?

Him: so i must always pay for that?

Me: Morris where is the squad right now? Im sure they tired been trained for 2 weeks for this mission

Him: military base

Me: ill be right there

I hung up my phone. This was it, we going in for the kill..

.

.

TERRA

It was just after 17:00 Danzo and i we were cooking, he told me we having guests over. Since he told me that he was gonna get my mother and my sister to come visit, im thinking Its them..

We were preparing Liver&onion rings with Bacon and Mash potatoes not forgetting peas and corn. We also did some bistro gravy. I wasn't familiar with the combination of the ingredients but im sure it tastes better than it sounds..

For dessert, we were gonna have an Oreo ice cream sandwich.

Him: and we done

He came and kissed me on my cheek

Him: Thank you for helping

Me: Don't mention it, i can't wait for our guests

Him: me too

Me: Let me go and freshen up a bit

I walked upstairs to go and freshen up and my phone rang. It was my mother. I was scared to answer it, we haven't spoken ever since the Drug scandal and to think that she's actually on her way here makes my heart to do 360 revolution per second literally..

I took it and answered..

Me: Mom

Her: Mandisa

Me: it is me

Her: kanti kwenzakali (what's happening)

I sat down..

Her: i heard that you on drugs Mandisa

Me: i think we can talk about this when you get here

Her: get there?

Me: kanti you not on your way?

Her: on my way where?

Me: Danzo said he will fetch you and MJ to come visit

Her: We not coming anywhere Mandisa we at home

That was a bitch.. Then who is coming?

The door opened..

Danzo: the guests are here

Me: Mom i have to go the guests are here

Mom: Yewena Mandisa!

Me: ill call you

I hung up while she was still yelling, i didn't even freshen up i walked with him to the dinning area only to see Nazulu and Somandlakazi sitting at the table..

Danzo had to be kidding me..

I looked at them..

Nazulu gave me a conniving smile...

Her: Terra please sit down

I went and sat opposite them..

Somandlakazi: How are you?

Me: Im fine

Nazulu: heard alot has been happening to you lately

Me: What can i say

Danzo sat down next to me..

Him: Im glad that you finally came to visit Nazulu

Her: Not my first time coming

Danzo: you came before?

She nodded

Advertisement

while her eyes were wondering about the room...

Her: With Xolo

Danzo: i didn't know

Somandlakazi: the food smells nice

Nazulu: my favourite dish

She started dishing up while Danzo poured wine for us..

Nazulu: you still know how to prepare the dish

Danzo: Family recipe

Nazulu smiled..

Somandlakazi: i can sense the positive and peaceful energy in the atmosphere

I rolled my eyes..

Nazulu: so how did the dinner go with Mr Naidoo?

She put her hand to cover her full mouth after that question..

Danzo: it went good, better than i expected.

Nazulu: that's good so im guessing he won't be taking his business elsewhere?

Danzo: i don't think so

Nazulu: How did he feel about Terra?

Danzo took two sips of his wine before replying..

Him: i didn't bring Terra along

Nazulu: Who did you go with?

Danzo: Xolo

Nazulu: Why?

Danzo: you know how Naidoo is, i felt it was better to go with Xolo because she's a socialite

Nazulu: we trying to make Terra fit in with our clients remember?

Danzo: Yeah i know that

As we were eating, i heard noise coming from the kitchen, someone was playing music loud and rapping along..

"I got a little bit of money filling up my pockets, Roll around like I run this shit.. I got a system filled up with toxins.. I've been broken-hearted, now it's fuck that bitch.. Getting high to deal with my problems Fucking bitches, getting drunk as shit"

We all looked at each other...

Nazulu: Who is that?

I recognised the voice so i stood up and went to the kitchen..

I couldn't believe my eyes..

It was Carl in a hoover board hoovering around the kitchen while playing a rap song..

He was out of his formal wear, he was swagging with his Snap back cap that he wore the other way round, and his navy blue&black sneakers..

He was holding a styrofoam cup, he doubled the cups...

He was a bit high i could tell, he wasn't himself at all...

Him: "We going out tonight, yeah we going out tonight, like fuck it"

I heard Danzo speaking behind me..

Him: Wtf??

When he saw us standing there he remained stationary and stopped the music from his phone..

Him: "Lord i need me a break"

I was very scared for him, Carl is crazy he knows how dangerous Danzo is..

Nazulu and Somandlakazi joined us..

Nazulu: Who is this?

Carl: Look the whole family is here

Danzo: What gives you the right to come at my house like this?
Starting to get tired of you!!

Danzo took out his phone and made a phone call..

Him: I need you to come and remove some Garbage in my house.. Yeah.. Make it quick.. Kill him i don't care!! Just get him out!

He then hung up..

Carl laughed..

Danzo: What's funny?

Carl: We bringing in squads?

Danzo: i called my cleaners to come clean you out!

Carl was relaxed about this situation..

Carl: biggest mistake

He went to the door and opened, he whistled and the K-9 unit made their way in while wearing the Police bullet proof vests for dogs..

I am scared of dogs so i stepped back a little..

It was like 10 dogs or so standing by Carl barking at us..

They looked very intimidating that i saw Danzo getting a bit uneasy..

Carl: Meet my squad, The German Sheperds.

Where the fuck did Carl get police dogs from?

They were barking ready to attack and Carl was just spinning with his hoover board giving Zero fucks about the situation..

65

TERRA

As if like the party couldn't get more messed up, Tpee walked in together with Detective Morris i was now overwhelmed with fear. Tpee was also on a hoverboard, but he kept on loosing his balance.

Him: i think my hoverboard is no longer Automatic and shit!

Carl: That's a first

They still didn't say what they wanted here, all this showing off is very unnecessary. If Carl could come and feel my heart beat, he would stop this shit he is doing right away..

Morris: Can we get this over and done with?

Carl looked at me.

Him: go get your clothes we going home a proper home, you living home boy over there

Danzo chuckled in disbelief..

Nazulu turned and gave me a death stare...

Her: What is going on Terra?

Danzo: She's been sleeping with this guy that's what's going on and now he is here being a nuisance

Nazulu was shocked, she looked at me very shocked..

Nazulu: What?

Somandlakazi: That's impossible

Nazulu: Terra have you been sleeping with this guy?

All eyes were on me, i didn't know what to say..

Tpee: Awkward (Whispering)

Nazulu did the unexpected and slapped me across my face, she was very mad..

Her: Ngazile, yazi ngazile ukuthi uyis'muka nandwedwe, Nondidwa ndini!!! (i knew that you are w tramp you whore)

She tried attacking me again but Somandlakazi held her back..

Carl: Arrest her Morris, arrest her for Assault!

Tpee: Nazulu Its funny how you busy going all WWE old hag Diva on Terra, do you even know your son's scandals?

Carl: he is fucking who again? His step sister?

Tpee: Noxolo!

Nazulu looked at Danzo..

Her: Danzo what are they talking about?

Danzo kept quiet..

Nazulu looked at Somandlakazi..

Nazulu: drive me home before i collapse and die, ive taken in too much for today

Somandlakazi held her and they walked out...

Danzo looked at Carl and them..

Him: You can now leave my house

Carl looked at me, i looked at him too with my eyes begging that "Please don't do this"

Him: We had a deal, and this is my favour im asking from you go upstairs get your cloth.. No fuck the clothes get your books and shit so we can leave

I was frozen, i didn't know what the next step was gonna be...

I knew Carl wasn't joking when he gave me a serious look...

Him: Now!

Danzo: This is getting ludachris let me call the cops

Morris: Yeah put your phone down sir i am the cops!

I let Carl down the first time, im not gonna do it again..

I dragged my heavy feet to the stairs..

Danzo: Terra what are you doing?

Me: Im sorry Danzo

Him: What the..? Terra you not leaving me or this house!

The door opened and Danzo's goons made their way in..

They were a bit shaken by the K-9 unit..

Soldier: Danzo Guantaguan? (what's going on)

Danzo: Just get this people out!

They went over to Carl and his crew, Morris whistled and The dogs surrounded Danzo's goons barking at them..

Soldier: Danzo you know im not good with Dogs

I continued walking upstairs Danzo followed me..

Him: Terra!

He was fuming i know that if he gets to me, i am dead..

Carl made his way to Danzo with his hoverboard and blocked his way...

Carl: You'll have to go through me first

Danzo: Get out of my way boy!

Carl was high, disoriented, there is no way he can match up to Danzo in his state..

Me: Carl

He turned and looked at me..

Him: i got this Lumlums go get your things

He turned and looked at Danzo, and Danzo threw a hard punch at him that he literally fell over from his hoverboard..

Me: Carl!

Morris: Hey!

He made his way to me..

I was scared, before he could do anything Morris held him and restrained him facedown

I quickly went upstairs while Tpee was attending to Carl..

Morris: im taking you down to the station!

Danzo: Im gonna find you Terra and im gonna kill you!!! Im gonna kill you and him!! You don't know who you messing with!

Morris walked him out and i went to the bedroom to take my things..

I started breathing in and out trying very hard to calm down i was very scared..

Me: Calm down Terra

I got my books and etc, then i made my way downstairs. Only Tpee and Carl were left now...

Carl was holding a cloth with ice cubes to his face..

Carl: i think he broke my nose

Tpee: What were you thinking though? Attacking someone while you high on purple kush!

Tpee looked at me..

Him: Are you ready to go?

I nodded

Carl put the cloth down and he looked buttered..

Tpee: let me get yall home

Carl: i think we should pass by at the clinic

Tpee: Stop being a pussy you fine

We got to Tpee's car and put my things in the trunk. Then Carl and i took the backseat..

I looked over at the house as we were driving away, this is the same gesture i did when i left home to the Zulu mansion and now the same thing is happening im leaving this home to another one..

I don't know what awaits me ahead, Danzo came to me as this perfect person and Carl is coming at me the same way..

I really don't know how my life got to this..

We arrived at the clinic and they attended to Carl, while Tpee and i waited at the Waiting room..

Tpee: are you alright?

I wasn't alright, we just went against the Zulus...

I gave him a faint smile..

Me: Im okay Him: They taking too long

Me: uhm Tpee Him: Yes?

Me: do you think i did the right thing?

Him: for yourself Yes but know that Danzo is gonna come back for you he will never rest until he has destroyed you

Me: How do you know him soo much?

Him: used to be best homies back in high school..

Me: Ohw

Him: Yeah i saw how he treated Brandy, it was shit

I was starting to get worried, Carl cannot protect himself at all, how is gonna protect me?

66

TERRA

We didn't drive straight to the house we drove up to some lounge. At least no severe damage was done to him so he was gonna be fine. We met up with a few of his friends at the club, Tpee was still here with us..

We were having a good time but i was very worried about Carl he was going hard on that drink he calls purple kush..

We were sitting with some artists and they were talking about Carl being featured in some music video of the late Artist who tragically passed on called Kush. Some of his music hasn't been released so Carl was asked to feature in one of the videos...

Tpee: are you comfortable?

Me: ya im fine

Him: That's better

Me: i don't like how Carl is going hard on this drink

Tpee was drinking sprite..

Tpee: Carl doesn't usually drink but when he does, he goes for a kill

I didn't take my phone and laptop because Danzo might've bugged them as always

Me: Its late i think we should be going

Him: You right about that

We waited for Carl to finish discussing the video thing then after Tpee drove us home because Carl was in no state to drive..

We got home and Tpee got my books and everything else inside.

Him: We will discuss the bursary situation tomorrow

Me: Okay Thank you

He said his goodbyes to Carl and left.

Carl came up to me and kissed me..

Him: Everything is gonna be alright now

Me: And you need to sleep

Him: Im used to purple kush

Me: if you say so

Him: What's wrong you don't look relieved or happy that you finally got away from him

Me: i am a bit concerned

Him: about?

Me: How are you planning to protect us from Danzo?

Him: Why don't you let me worry about that?

Me: Carl you clearly not built for violence

Him: Pardon?

Me: fighting and everything is just not you

Him: How would you know that?

I looked down..

Him: Ohhh i see Its about what happened today

He went and sat down..

Me: i just think that what you did was a bit premature

Him: Can you trust me or at least give me the damn benefit of the doubt?

I kept quiet..

Sonia walked in the kitchen from the lounge..

She looked at me then chuckled in disbelief.

Her: ill be damned!

This situation i don't like at all..

Her: are you serious right now Carl?

Carl looked at her..

Him: You still here?

Sonia: so this is the reason why you want me out? Want a break? Dumping me?

She was starting to be very dramatic and loud..

Her: if you wanna leave me then Its okay, but you ain't leaving me for another bitch!

Me: a bitch?

Her: would you prefer me finding another name for you?
Tramp!

I have never been in a position where i have to fight, especially with another girl for a guy. Even Kenzo never put me in such a position.....

Jeany walked in..

Her: What's all this shouting?

Carl: Jeany can you please drive Sonia home

Jeany: Why?

Carl: Just do it please

Sonia: Really Carl are you doing this to me?

Carl: Sonia please don't make yourself look stupid

I could sense the anger in her building up, she was like a frog ready to explode and before i knew it she was charging to me, Jeany tried stopping her but she pushed her away that Jeany fell and that's when Carl got mad too..

He came and grabbed her by her arm then literally pushed her outside and locked the door...

She was banging on the door like a mad person..

I looked at Carl then made my way to the guest bedroom..

Him: Terra wait..

I ignored him as he followed me..

Him: Lumlums

I closed the door right in his face and i went to sit on the bed...

Why am i cursed? All my boyfriends come with some girl problems. First it was Kenzo, then Danzo, now Carl..

What is wrong with me? Why do i have soo much bad luck?

I was suffocating in this life, i was confused

Advertisement

i was crazy depressed..

Life is unfair, after the hardships i faced growing up struggling even now im still struggling....

Life is truly unfair, Death should be easy because life is very difficult..

I must've cried myself to sleep because i woke up the following day still fully dressed, i was without a blanket and i had a sore throat..

I got out of bed and made my way to the door so i go to the bathroom to wash my face and rinse my mouth. I found Carl passed out next to the door, so he sat next to the door all night that he even passed out.

This was very sweet but i was still mad as hell.

I banged the door hard making him wake up..

Him: Eish..

He was done i could see, after effects of purple kush

I went to the bathroom and brushed my teeth with his tooth brush then washed my face..

I made my way to the guest room and he was still sitting there but he was awake this time..

I got to the guest room passing him and got a towel then went to bath..

I had me a relaxing warm bubble bath that took 30min

When i was done i dried my wet body with the towel and wrapped the towel around my body and made my way to his room. Surprisingly enough he was still sitting next to the guest room door as i passed him...

I got to his bedroom and used his lotion then wore his boxers, tshirt, and sleepers. I tied my braids into a bun..

I went back to the guest room and it was sad i decided to let him in so we can talk..

Him: i have a terrible headache

I folded my arms and gave him a serious look

He cleared his throat..

Him: i don't love Sonia, never had and never will.. I was with her because of what her sister did for my sister. I ended things with her i told her to go and i don't know why she was still here..

I didn't say anything..

Him: Im sorry Lumlums

I still kept quiet then made my way to the door. I am not gonna forgive him that easily..

Before i went out he said my name..

I turned and looked at him.

Him: i love you too

Those words really hit deep, i ignored and made my way to the kitchen Jeany was there eating cereal..

Me: Morning

Her: Hey

Jeany is the most sweetest and kind person i know

Me: Can i borrow your phone wanna call a friend

Her: sure

She gave me and i tried calling Brandy but her phone was off..

I really need her help especially since things are like this now..

I tried her a few times she didn't answer..

I went to Facebook and i went to her account what i saw there really took me by great shock..

Her timeline was flooded with "R.I.P" she was even tagged on a few posts with people posting her pics saying "Gone to soon" i was soo shocked that i dropped Jeany's phone..

67

TERRA

-2 WEEKS LATER

Living with Carl has been very peaceful. I laughed more than crying, he has been a wonderful boyfriend thus far and sometimes i would wonder if he is real or putting on a front, i always wonder when will he Snap because that's how Danzo been like was sweet, then after he snapped...

Carl was nothing like Danzo, i know Carl when he is angry and i know him when he doesn't like something that i do. There's pure and sincere communication between me and Carl he is always clear about things that he don't like than being violent about everything..

Coming to school matters Although i know that next year ill be repeating, but i have been serious with my other modules making sure that next year i repeat less modules and i don't let Tpee down anymore or make him regret twice about giving me a bursary..

Unfortunately Brandy was no more for real i even attended her funeral and that's where i learned about her death that she was actually hijacked with her Husband and son. They shot both her and her Husband then they tied her at the back of the car, as

the car drove off she was dragged across the Tar road causing more and more internal and external damage to her..

What was more sad is that her Husband survived but he is no longer himself mentally as one bullet penetrated his skull and causing trauma to his brain leaving him brain damaged. He is in a wheelchair and in a home with other people like him..

Their son was unharmed and Nazulu claimed full custody off him which she is currently raising him making me to think that Danzo has been behind Brandy's death..

Ever since i left Danzo's house that night i haven't heard from him at all which was weird, it was more like he had disappeared from the face of the earth..

I haven't patched things up between me and my family i just don't know how to approach my mother especially since now that im with Carl, without her flipping..

Other than that my life seemed to be peaceful and talking to Carl about everything that Danzo did to me was my road to healing, i preferred talking to him than a psychologist. He is a good listener and gives fruitful advice, after all he is smart..

It was around 17:00 and i had just got home from school. I take the bus lately because Carl sometimes knocks off late he comes home at around 20:00 so i get impatient waiting for him that i

decide to ride the bus from school to Pretoria North and Pretoria west..

It was quiet i don't know where Jeany was but i went to put my things in the guest room and took a quick shower to restore my energy since i was damn tired..

Carl had bought me clothes, a new phone, laptop and everything else.

Sometimes i wonder where he gets soo much money from i mean he is living a lavish life to be living off on no lecturer's salary....

After showering i made my way to the kitchen to cook. I wanted to do a simple meal which was Pap, wors, and home made chakalaka..

I don't know how Carl and Jeany were gonna react to the meal because they white i don't think they have had any encounters with such a meal..

Jeany walked in as i was busy cooking. I like Jeany she has been very good to me after the Sonia situation i thought she was gonna hate me and blame me for the break up since i learned that Sonia's sister saved Jeany's life..

Her: Hey

Me: hi, how was school?

Her: boring and i think im gonna fail my french test

Jeany is in a private school and doing like 14 subjects most of them are foreign languages..

Heard her school fees is mad expensive because Its one of the best girls high school in South Africa..

My living here i got to see how much of a spoiled brat Jeany is whatever she wants Carl gives her..

I totally understand because they all they have..

Her: and if i fail Carl is gonna kill me ive always been thee A student

Her blazer supported her statement because she got alot of those honour student safety pin birch awards..

Me: isn't french one of your favourite?

She shook her head no...

Her: Spanish

Me: well im sure you can pull through

Her: i hope so

She was busy checking her phone..

Me: expecting a call?

She looked at me..

Her: huh?

Me: call?

Her: uhm no

I looked at her..

Her: fine but don't tell Carl waiting for my bf to call

Me: You have a boyfriend what an achievement

Her: yaa been dating for a month

Me: How is he?

Her: Well im no longer a virgin so you can tell how he is like

Me: Whaaat?? Carl is gonna flip

Her: Please don't tell him

Me: Never your secret is safe

There was a knock at the door..

Her: How did the person get in the yard this is a private residence

She stood up and went to open it was Sonia..

Jeany: Sonia

She pushed her out of the way as she made her way in. I don't like this Sonia of a person reason why i haven't moved into the main bedroom because her everything is still there..

She gave us intimidating looks..

Her: is Carl around?

Jeany: No

She took off her sunglasses, her eyes were puffy proving she been crying alot..

Her: ill wait for him

She catwalk herself all the way to the lounge..

Jeany and i just looked at each other..

CARL

I was at the workshop where we were holding Danzo captive. Been 5 Days since i had him kidnapped. After Terra told me what this dude did to him, and showing me those scars on her back i contacted Tpee and he called relevant people and we got Danzo here. I had him tied in the middle of the room completely naked. I had his hands tied with ropes that extended from the ceiling..

I wanted him to feel the pain so i had him tortured everyday same way he tortured Terra..

Having a home boy like Duvenhage who Sold his soul to the devil for riches and in turn a had a curse on him because you can't accept anything from the devil without consequences. He is human but at the same time he has a heart of a Lion literally so he can turn into a Lion, a big scary one for that Matter..

So i had him turning into a Lion in the presence of Danzo so Danzo can see that even though i can't use a gun, even though im not too much violent but i have homies who will always come through for me..

He was scared and shocked to see a human turning into a Lion right in front of him, that he even pissed on himself when Duvenhage went closer to him as his lion self..

It was a fullfilment to me to see him scared, i wanted him to feel fear, the same fear he put through other people..

After checking up on him today he seemed to be giving up on life, he was done and dangling on the floor couldn't maintain his balance. I didn't want him dying, i just wanted him to feel the pain and fear he has caused to other people..

After checking him up i drove straight home..

I arrived home and from the kitchen i could hear noise coming upstairs, someone was playing music loud and i mean loud..

I was very surprised to see Sonia around, bitch doesn't know when to give up..

Her: Carl Me: What?

I couldn't hear her because of the noise. Me: hold on

I made my way upstairs and the noise was coming from Jeany's room. I always talk to Jeany about playing music loud.

I opened the door ready to give her hell until i witnessed a priceless moment..

Terra and Jeany were ontop of Jeany's bed wearing nothing but Tshirts and holding their hairbrushes busy singing along and swaying their almost non-existent hips from left to right. They seemed to be enjoying themselves singing their lungs out without even notincing me..

Them: "I've been there all night,

I've been there all day, And boy, got me walking side to side"

I just stood there shaking my head and laughing. Not only where they not good singers but they also not good dancers..i was at ease seeing them connecting so well, not even Sonia has connected with Jeany like that. Sonia has always been jealous of how i love Jeany hence making her to love Jeany less,but Terra and Jeany just connected perfectly

68

TERRA

When Jeany and i were done with our silly dancing and singing moment, i went to the kitchen to start preparing for dinner when i found Carl sitting at the table thinking. He was deep in his thoughts, something was definitely bothering him..

Me: Babe

He didn't even hear that..

Me: Carl

He looked at me and smiled..

Him: Hey you

I went over to him and kissed him. I then ran my fingers on his hair, i just like doing that because of how soft it is..

He put his hand around my waist and gently squeezed it..

Me: What are you thinking about?

He sighed..

Him: Nothing much just alot of work that awaits me

I know very well that Carl is hiding something from me, that's one thing i don't like about him, he is too secretive..

Me: Ohw Sonia was here

He removed his hand from me, it was like i hit a nerve..

Him: i saw her

Me: so what did she want?

Him: Nothing

Me: Carl..

Him: it was nothing Terra

I didn't say no more..

He stood up...

Him: Im going to take a shower

He pecked my lips and then went..

He forgot his phone on the table. I walked around looking at it. I mean i don't like to pry, but with Carl and how he is secretive i don't have a choice. I took it and tried to unlock but security was very tight. I kept on trying and trying until i gave up..

I put it back on the table, and then i went to start preparing the table for dinner...

Carl came down when he was done bathing, he went and got his phone. He looked at it, and then looked at me..

Me: What?

Him: What where you doing with my phone?

Me: Your phone?

He waved it to me..

Him: the screen hasn't dimmed meaning someone was trying to unlock

I shrugged my shoulders...

Him: if you try to unlock my phone the screen won't dim, i have installed an App that you have to access to dim my phone

Me: Carl i don't know what you talking about

I started dishing up..

He sat down too...

Jeany came to join us also..

Jeany: What are we eating?

Me: Pap

Advertisement

wors, and Chakalaka

They looked at each other and then looked at me..

Jeany: Why are we eating such?

Me: i wanted to do something different, try it Its nice

She took a bite..

Me: and?

Her: Not too bad

Me: i know

We continued eating in peace, when we were done we put the dishes in the dishwasher..

After clearing the table i went to the guest room to study for a few minutes when Carl walked in..

Me: Ain't you supposed to be catching up on work?

He came and sat next to me...

Him: That can wait.. What are you doing?

Me: studying

Him: That's good

I went back to reading..

Him: When are you moving into the main bedroom?

Me: Sonia's things are still there?

Him: Yes but she is history

Me: doesn't look that way

He kept quiet..

Me: Carl are you gonna sit there and be lost in your thoughts or are you gonna tell me what's going on?

Him: There's nothing that's going on

My phone rang and it was my mother..

My heart jumped a little, i just looked at it as it rang..

Carl: Are you gonna get that?

I took it then took a deep breath and i answered it..

Me: Ma..

Her: Don't Ma me!! Don't you dare and say Ma to me..

I kept quiet...

Her: ukuphi? Where are you?

Me: i..

Her: yazi Mandisa uyasihlaza (you are embarrassing us)

My mom is always overreacting...

Her: is it true what Nazulu told me? That you living with a white boy?

I looked at Carl..

Me: Yes Ma..

Her: i can't believe this, i am being tested this is a test!

I don't know what to say to her when she's like this..

Her: Your husband is even missing, wena uBusy with other guys!

Me: Mom

Her: Yey wena Mandisa! By tomorrow i want you back kwaZulu you hear? The whole family is up on their feet trying to find your husband wena uBusy nobufebe (you busy bitching around)

Me: Its not like that mom

Her: i don't wanna hear anything, either you come back to your in laws tomorrow or else you... you are no longer my daughter

Me: Mom

Her: if tomorrow comes and i don't see you kwaNazulu, Terra you will be dead and buried to me

She then hung up.. I can't believe this, my own mother just disowned me..

Carl: is everything alright?

I shook my head no with tears in my eyes

He pulled me closer to him and hugged me..

I just wish that my mother can see how the Zulu family is like..

After crying i told Carl everything that my mom just said to me over the phone..

Him: she is just angry she will come around

Me: You will find that Danzo disappeared on his own to make me look more bad to my family

Carl: that's not right.. Ill go and make you some Earl grey tea, it will calm you down

Me: Thank you

He walked out and i got my phone, i tried calling Danzo but his phone just rang...

I went out of the bedroom still calling him and i heard his phone ringing in the house. I followed the sound of his phone's ringtone which led me to Carl's bedroom. I opened the drawer and i found Danzo's phone. I was confused and shocked, what is Carl doing with Danzo's phone?

69

TERRA

I left the phone there and went downstairs. I was still confused i mean could it be that Carl has something to do with Danzo's disappearance? Ofcourse he does or else why would he have his phone?

He was in the kitchen making me the cup of tea. I looked at him because i didn't know this stranger standing infront of me.

Could it be that Carl is more dangerous than Danzo? Did i put myself in another Danzo situation? I didn't know what to think, i didn't know how to answer my own questions. I am not even going to confront him about this, i am scared of what he might say..

Him: thought i was gonna bring the cup of tea to your room

I looked at him, without saying a word. Carl looks soo innocent to be doing what he is doing..

Him: Lumy?

Me: huh?

Him: Where is your mind at?

Me: i..

I Composed myself as to not show him that i am hiding something from him..

Me: i was just thinking about all the notes that i have to go through for Oral health, next week we writing our first test

Him: What is it gonna be about?

Me: the usual. Oral hygiene care, caries, Flouride, you know.

Him: Those ones are easy

I kept quiet and he looked at me..

Him: Are you sure that you okay?

His look clearly indicated that whatever reply you going to give me it better be an honest one because i can see right through you..

I smiled..

Me: Yes babe im fine

I went over to him to take the cup of tea..

Me: Thank you for the tea

I walked away and he grabbed me, making me to spill..

I put the cup on the table, and he pulled me closer to him then kissed me..

That moment made me to even forget what i have discovered that he has Danzo's phone,and might be involved in his disappearance..

We slowly made our way to his bedroom while undressing each other....

Love making with Carl is always so passionate, Its way different than how Danzo and i used to make love. With Danzo it was always single or one-sided. It was always him being satisfied than both of us..

I love Carl, our love for each other keeps on growing and growing.

I just wish that all of this can be a smooth ride without other people interfering or threatning our relationship...

Carl and i we always use protection, we still have a long way to go so right now we not ready for kids..

This time around he wasn't ontop of me, we were laying side by side with my leg ontop of him, and him holding on to it for balance. We would kiss in between or let our breaths warming each other's faces. Our smooth moaning, gently biting his lower lip

Advertisement

and him planting love bites on my neck. This are the kind of moments that bring us closer to each other..

We ended our night of passion with me ontop of him, after riding him like there's no tomorrow i was in pain and tired..

Me: so Its official, i ride better than you

He chuckled..

I got off him and he took the condom off..

Him: Don't you think we can use contraception?

Me: fine by me

I got out of bed and wrapped myself with a towel.

He came back from the bathroom..

Me: Carl

He looked at me.

Me: Can i ask you something?

Him: Yeah sure. Me: Who is Sammy?

I have seen her pictures alot around the house..

Him: She's my ex, she passed on a few Years ago from Aids

Me: Wow uhm. Him: Don't worry I'm negative

Me: Well i wasn't worried about that

He gave me a weird look...

Me: Anyway what happened to her? How did she get that?

Him: she was a prostitute

Me: Wow Carl you are different. He gave me a side smile.

Me: so how you ended up with Miss crazy (Sonia)

He laughed and came to pick me up. Him: Let's go bath

We went to bath and then went to bed. Its good for a change to be in the arms of a man who won't use them later to beat you up..

I woke up the following day it was Saturday, i thought i was gonna stay indoors and do a bit of studying when i recieved a call from Sonia saying she wanna talk to me. I was surprised at that and how she got my numbers from..

Carl and Jeany were not around, they went to the mall to do some shopping Apparently Jeany needs new clothes. Jeany has alot of clothes, walking into her closet is like walking into a clothing store so i don't get why she's always shopping..

I cleaned the house a bit while waiting for Sonia, and she came at around 11:00am..

We sat around the table, this was very much awkward for me..

Me: so would you like something to drink?

Her: No Thank you i am not staying for long

Me: Okay

Her: I wanted us to meet up because it is very crucial from now for us to get along

She was speaking in riddles that i couldn't understand what she was trying to say.

Her: i love Carl and he is with you, im just taking that as if like he is still confused men do get confused with a new skirt around

I chuckled trying to mock her statement..

Her: Nevertheless i wanted to discuss something with you

I looked at her.

Her: Carl and i we gonna be a family soon, we having a baby

That i didn't expect, i truly didn't expect. She looked at me hoping that statement broke me, and it did but im not gonna show her, im not gonna give her that Satisfaction..

I smiled..

Me: i know Carl already told me

She gave me a shocked expression..

Her: Ohw then there's no reason for me to show you the confirmation from the doctor stating that I'm pregnant

I replied with a Gesture. She stood up..

Her: i think that we will need to use the guest room when the baby is born so don't get too comfortable

Me: i sure won't. She took her bag and left..

I was very hurt but mostly disappointed that Carl didn't tell me i had to hear it from Miss thang there...

I am not going to confront him, i will let Sonia do that job for me..

Jeany came back later alone, she caught me off guard that i couldn't wipe my tears in time...

Her: Hey what's wrong?

Me: It's nothing

Her: can't be anything

She came and sat next to me. Me: Sonia was here

Her: and? I exhaled...

Me: She's pregnant. Her eyes widened..

Her: say what?

Me: having to hear it from her than Carl was just..

Her: Im sorry hey

Me: What's gonna happen to me? Is Carl gonna leave me to join his family once the baby is born?

Her: Don't think like that, Carl loves you. I have never seen him this much inlove since Sammy

Me: i hope so. She kept quiet.

Me: Something bothering you? Her: It's probably nothing

Me: You can talk to me. She looked at me.

Her: Please don't judge me

Me: Im the last person to judge you believe me

Her: My boyfriend Taylor Duvenhage, his wife is coming home next month. Me: he has a wife?

Her: Yes her name is Naledi. Me: How old is this guy?

Her: he is old. Me: How old?

Her: older than Carl. Me: Shuuuu this is a messed up situation

Her: too much. Me: do you love him?

Her: i do a lot. Me: i wonder how Carl is gonna feel about this

Her: and they close friends. Me: You joking right?

She shook her head no. Me: His wife is coming from where?

Her: Mental institution

Me: Mental??.. this is very messed up

Jeany's situation is messed up..

THE END OF SEASON 1

SEASON 2 COMING SOON!

Thank you guys for downloading this book from my site please keep visiting <https://novelsguru.com/> for supporting me and also don't forget to share it with your friends.

Dear Friends please download these books direct from <https://novelsguru.com/> bookmark this site for latest African books, and also supporting me Thanks.

For daily latest books please visit <https://novelsguru.com/>

And also visit my Facebook page, and like and share it <https://www.facebook.com/groups/3345453369055623>